Union Calendar No. 112

118TH CONGRESS, *1st Session* } HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES { REPT. 118–143, Part 1

EXPANDING ACCESS TO CAPITAL ACT OF 2023

JULY 17, 2023.—Committed to the Committee of the Whole House on the State of the Union and ordered to be printed

Mr. MCHENRY, from the Committee on Financial Services, submitted the following

R E P O R T

together with

MINORITY VIEWS

[To accompany H.R. 2799]

[Including cost estimate of the Congressional Budget Office]

The Committee on Financial Services, to whom was referred the bill (H.R. 2799) to make reforms to the capital markets of the United States, and for other purposes, having considered the same, reports favorably thereon with an amendment and recommends that the bill as amended do pass.

The amendment is as follows:

Strike all after the enacting clause and insert the following:

SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE; TABLE OF CONTENTS.

(a) SHORT TITLE.—This Act may be cited as the "Expanding Access to Capital Act of 2023".

(b) TABLE OF CONTENTS.—The table of contents for this Act is as follows:

★39–006

DIVISION A—STRENGTHENING PUBLIC MARKETS

TITLE I—REMOVE ABERRATIONS IN THE MARKET CAP TEST FOR TARGET COMPANY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

SEC. 1101. AVOIDING ABERRATIONAL RESULTS IN REQUIREMENTS FOR ACQUISITION AND DISPOSITION FINANCIAL STATEMENTS.

The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise section 210.1–02(w)(1)(i)(A) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to permit a registrant, in determining the significance of an acquisition or disposition described in such section 210.1–02(w)(1)(i)(A), to calculate the registrant's aggregate worldwide market value based on the applicable trading value, conversion value, or exchange value of all of the registrant's outstanding classes of stock (including preferred stock and non-traded common shares that are convertible into or exchangeable for traded common shares) and not just the voting and non-voting common equity of the registrant.

TITLE II—HELPING STARTUPS CONTINUE TO GROW

SEC. 1201. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Helping Startups Continue To Grow Act".

SEC. 1202. EMERGING GROWTH COMPANY CRITERIA.

(a) SECURITIES ACT OF 1933.—Section 2(a)(19) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(19)) is amended—

(1) by striking "$1,000,000,000" each place such term appears and inserting "$1,500,000,000";

(2) in subparagraph (B)—

(A) by striking "fifth" and inserting "7-year"; and

(B) by adding "or" at the end;

(3) in subparagraph (C), by striking "; or" and inserting a period; and

(4) by striking subparagraph (D).

(b) SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934.—Section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)) is amended, in the first paragraph (80) (related to emerging growth companies)—

(1) by striking "$1,000,000,000" each place such term appears and inserting "$1,500,000,000";

(2) in subparagraph (B)—

(A) by striking "fifth" and inserting "7-year"; and

(B) by adding "or" at the end;

(3) in subparagraph (C), by striking "; or" and inserting a period; and

(4) by striking subparagraph (D).

TITLE III—SEC AND PCAOB AUDITOR REQUIREMENTS FOR NEWLY PUBLIC COMPANIES

SEC. 1301. AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE FOR CERTAIN PAST AUDITS OCCURRING BEFORE AN ISSUER IS A PUBLIC COMPANY.

(a) AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS OF THE PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD.—Section 103 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (15 U.S.C. 7213) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(e) AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE FOR CERTAIN PAST AUDITS OCCURRING BEFORE AN ISSUER IS A PUBLIC COMPANY.—With respect to an issuer that is a public company or an issuer that has filed a registration statement to become a public company, the auditor independence rules established by the Board with respect to audits occurring before the last fiscal year of the issuer completed before the issuer filed a registration statement to become a public company shall treat an auditor as independent if—

"(1) the auditor is independent under standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants applicable to certified public accountants in United States; or

"(2) with respect to a foreign issuer, the auditor is independent under comparable standards applicable to certified public accountants in the issuer's home country.".

(b) AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS OF THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION.—Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78j–1) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(n) AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE FOR CERTAIN PAST AUDITS OCCURRING BEFORE AN ISSUER IS A PUBLIC COMPANY.—With respect to an issuer that is a public company or an issuer that has filed a registration statement to become a public company, the auditor independence rules established by the Commission under the securities laws with respect to audits occurring before the last fiscal year of the issuer completed before the issuer filed a registration statement to become a public company shall treat an auditor as independent if—

"(1) the auditor is independent under standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants applicable to certified public accountants in United States; or

"(2) with respect to a foreign issuer, the auditor is independent under comparable standards applicable to certified public accountants in the issuer's home country.".

TITLE IV—EXPAND THE PROTECTION FOR RESEARCH REPORTS TO COVER ALL SECURITIES OF ALL ISSUERS

SEC. 1401. PROVISION OF RESEARCH.

Section 2(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(3)) is amended—
(a) by striking "an emerging growth company" and inserting "an issuer";
(b) by striking "the common equity" and inserting "any"; and
(c) by striking "such emerging growth company" and inserting "such issuer".

TITLE V—EXCLUDE QIBS AND IAAS FROM THE RECORD HOLDER COUNT FOR MANDATORY REGISTRATION

SEC. 1501. EXCLUSIONS FROM MANDATORY REGISTRATION THRESHOLD.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Section 12(g)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78l(g)(1)) is amended—

(1) in subparagraph (A)(i), by inserting after "persons" the following: "(that are not a qualified institutional buyer or an institutional accredited investor)"; and

(2) in subparagraph (B), by inserting after "persons" the following: "(that are not a qualified institutional buyer or an institutional accredited investor)".

(b) NONAPPLICABILITY OF GENERAL EXEMPTIVE AUTHORITY.—Section 36 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78mm) shall not apply to the matter inserted by the amendments made by subsection (a).

TITLE VI—EXPAND WKSI ELIGIBILITY

SEC. 1601. DEFINITION OF WELL-KNOWN SEASONED ISSUER.

For purposes of the Federal securities laws, and regulations issued thereunder, an issuer shall be a "well-known seasoned issuer" if—

(1) the aggregate market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates of the issuer is $250,000,000 or more (as determined under Form S–3 general instruction I.B.1. as in effect on the date of enactment of this Act); and

(2) the issuer otherwise satisfies the requirements of the definition of "well-known seasoned issuer" contained in section 230.405 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations without reference to any requirement in such definition relating to

minimum worldwide market value of outstanding voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates.

TITLE VII—SMALLER REPORTING COMPANY, ACCELERATED FILER, AND LARGE ACCELERATED FILER THRESHOLDS

SEC. 1701. SMALLER REPORTING COMPANY, ACCELERATED FILER, AND LARGE ACCELERATED FILER THRESHOLDS.

(a) SMALLER REPORTING COMPANIES.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise the definition of a "smaller reporting company" under section 229.10(f)(1) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations—

(A) in paragraph (i), by adjusting the public float threshold from $250,000,000 to $500,000,000; and

(B) in paragraph (ii)—

(i) by adjusting the annual revenue threshold from $100,000,000 to $250,000,000; and

(ii) in paragraph (B), by adjusting the public float threshold from $700,000,000 to $900,000,000.

(2) USE OF THREE-YEAR ROLLING AVERAGE ANNUAL REVENUES.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise paragraphs (1)(ii) and (2)(iii)(B) under the definition of "smaller reporting company" under section 229.10(f)(1) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, by substituting "three-year rolling average annual revenues" for "annual revenues".

(3) CONFORMING CHANGES.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise the definition of a "smaller reporting company" under sections 230.405 and 240.12b–2 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, and any other rule of the Commission in the same manner as such definition is revised under paragraphs (1) and (2).

(b) ACCELERATED FILERS AND LARGE ACCELERATED FILERS.—

(1) LARGE ACCELERATED FILER.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise the definition of a "large accelerated filer" under section 240.12b–2(2) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to increase the threshold amount (for the aggregate worldwide market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates of an issuer) from $700,000,000 to $750,000,000.

(2) THRESHOLD TO EXIT ACCELERATED FILER STATUS.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise section 240.12b–2(3)(ii) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to increase the threshold amount (for the aggregate worldwide market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates of an issuer) at which an issuer is no longer an accelerated filer from $60,000,000 to $75,000,000.

(3) THRESHOLD TO EXIT LARGE ACCELERATED FILER STATUS.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise section 240.12b–2(3)(iii) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to increase the threshold amount (for the aggregate worldwide market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates of an issuer) at which an issuer is no longer a large accelerated filer from $560,000,000 to $750,000,000.

(4) EXCLUSION OF SMALLER REPORTING COMPANIES.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise the definitions of an "accelerated filer" and a "large accelerated filer" under paragraphs (1) and (2) of section 240.12b–2 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, respectively, to exclude any issuer that is a smaller reporting company, as defined under section 229.10(f)(1) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.

DIVISION B—HELPING SMALL BUSINESSES AND ENTREPRENEURS

TITLE I—UNLOCKING CAPITAL FOR SMALL BUSINESSES

SEC. 2101. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Unlocking Capital for Small Businesses Act of 2023".

SEC. 2102. SAFE HARBORS FOR PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKERS AND FINDERS.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Section 15 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78o) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(p) PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKER SAFE HARBOR.—

"(1) REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this subsection the Commission shall promulgate regulations with respect to private placement brokers that are no more stringent than those imposed on funding portals.

"(2) NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this subsection the Commission shall promulgate regulations that require the rules of any national securities association to allow a private placement broker to become a member of such national securities association subject to reduced membership requirements consistent with this subsection.

"(3) DISCLOSURES REQUIRED.—Before effecting a transaction, a private placement broker shall disclose clearly and conspicuously, in writing, to all parties to the transaction as a result of the broker's activities—

"(A) that the broker is acting as a private placement broker;

"(B) the amount of any payment or anticipated payment for services rendered as a private placement broker in connection with such transaction;

"(C) the person to whom any such payment is made; and

"(D) any beneficial interest in the issuer, direct or indirect, of the private placement broker, of a member of the immediate family of the private placement broker, of an associated person of the private placement broker, or of a member of the immediate family of such associated person.

"(4) PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKER DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term 'private placement broker' means a person that—

"(A) receives transaction-based compensation—

"(i) for effecting a transaction by—

"(I) introducing an issuer of securities and a buyer of such securities in connection with the sale of a business effected as the sale of securities; or

"(II) introducing an issuer of securities and a buyer of such securities in connection with the placement of securities in transactions that are exempt from registration requirements under the Securities Act of 1933; and

"(ii) that is not with respect to—

"(I) a class of publicly traded securities;

"(II) the securities of an investment company (as defined in section 3 of the Investment Company Act of 1940); or

"(III) a variable or equity-indexed annuity or other variable or equity-indexed life insurance product;

"(B) with respect to a transaction for which such transaction-based compensation is received—

"(i) does not handle or take possession of the funds or securities; and

"(ii) does not engage in an activity that requires registration as an investment adviser under State or Federal law; and

"(C) is not a finder as defined under subsection (q).

"(q) FINDER SAFE HARBOR.—

"(1) NONREGISTRATION.—A finder is exempt from the registration requirements of this Act.

"(2) NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS.—A finder shall not be required to become a member of any national securities association.

"(3) FINDER DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term 'finder' means a person described in paragraphs (A) and (B) of subsection (p)(4) that—

"(A) receives transaction-based compensation of equal to or less than $500,000 in any calendar year;

"(B) receives transaction-based compensation in connection with transactions that result in a single issuer selling securities valued at equal to or less than $15,000,000 in any calendar year;

"(C) receives transaction-based compensation in connection with transactions that result in any combination of issuers selling securities valued at equal to or less than $30,000,000 in any calendar year; or

"(D) receives transaction-based compensation in connection with fewer than 16 transactions that are not part of the same offering or are otherwise unrelated in any calendar year.".

(b) VALIDITY OF CONTRACTS WITH REGISTERED PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKERS AND FINDERS.—Section 29 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78cc) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(d) Subsection (b) shall not apply to a contract made for a transaction if—

"(1) the transaction is one in which the issuer engaged the services of a broker or dealer that is not registered under this Act with respect to such transaction;

"(2) such issuer received a self-certification from such broker or dealer certifying that such broker or dealer is a registered private placement broker under section 15(p) or a finder under section 15(q); and

"(3) the issuer either did not know that such self-certification was false or did not have a reasonable basis to believe that such self-certification was false.".

(c) REMOVAL OF PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKERS FROM DEFINITIONS OF BROKER.—

(1) RECORDS AND REPORTS ON MONETARY INSTRUMENTS TRANSACTIONS.—Section 5312 of title 31, United States Code, is amended in subsection (a)(2)(G) by inserting "with the exception of a private placement broker as defined in section 15(p)(4) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78o(p)(4))" before the semicolon at the end.

(2) SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934.—Section 3(a)(4) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4)) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(G) PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKERS.—A private placement broker as defined in section 15(p)(4) is not a broker for the purposes of this Act.".

SEC. 2103. LIMITATIONS ON STATE LAW.

Section 15(i) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78o(i)) is amended—

(1) by redesignating paragraphs (3) and (4) as paragraphs (4) and (5), respectively;

(2) by inserting after paragraph (2) the following:

"(3) PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKERS AND FINDERS.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—No State or political subdivision thereof may enforce any law, rule, regulation, or other administrative action that imposes greater registration, audit, financial recordkeeping, or reporting requirements on a private placement broker or finder than those that are required under subsections (p) and (q), respectively.

"(B) DEFINITION OF STATE.—For purposes of this paragraph, the term 'State' includes the District of Columbia and each territory of the United States."; and

(3) in paragraph (4), as so redesignated, by striking "paragraph (3)" and inserting "paragraph (5)".

TITLE II—SMALL BUSINESS INVESTOR CAPITAL ACCESS

SEC. 2201. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Small Business Investor Capital Access Act".

SEC. 2202. INFLATION ADJUSTMENT FOR THE EXEMPTION THRESHOLD FOR CERTAIN INVESTMENT ADVISERS OF PRIVATE FUNDS.

Section 203(m) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b–3(m)) is amended by adding at the end the following:

"(5) INFLATION ADJUSTMENT.—The Commission shall adjust the dollar amount described under paragraph (1)—

"(A) upon enactment of this paragraph, to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the Department of Labor between the date of enactment

of the Private Fund Investment Advisers Registration Act of 2010 and the date of enactment of this paragraph; and

"(B) annually thereafter, to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the Department of Labor.".

TITLE III—IMPROVING CAPITAL ALLOCATION FOR NEWCOMERS

SEC. 2301. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Improving Capital Allocation for Newcomers Act of 2023".

SEC. 2302. QUALIFYING VENTURE CAPITAL FUNDS.

Section 3(c)(1) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(1)) is amended—

(1) in the matter preceding subparagraph (A), by striking "250 persons" and inserting "600 persons"; and

(2) in subparagraph (C)(i), by striking "$10,000,000" and inserting "$150,000,000".

TITLE IV—SMALL ENTREPRENEURS' EMPOWERMENT AND DEVELOPMENT

SEC. 2401. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Small Entrepreneurs' Empowerment and Development Act of 2023" or the "SEED Act of 2023".

SEC. 2402. MICRO-OFFERING EXEMPTION.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Section 4 of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77d) is amended—

(1) in subsection (a), by adding at the end the following:

"(8) transactions meeting the requirements of subsection (f).."; and

(2) by adding at the end the following:

"(f) MICRO-OFFERINGS.—The transactions referred to in subsection (a)(8) are transactions involving the sale of securities by an issuer (including all entities controlled by or under common control with the issuer) where the aggregate amount of all securities sold by the issuer, including any amount sold in reliance on the exemption provided under subsection (a)(8), during the 12-month period preceding such transaction, does not exceed $250,000.".

(b) DISQUALIFICATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act, the Securities and Exchange Commission shall, by rule, establish disqualification provisions under which an issuer shall not be eligible to offer securities pursuant to section 4(a)(8) of the Securities Act of 1933, as added by this section.

(2) INCLUSIONS.—Disqualification provisions required by this subsection shall—

(A) be substantially similar to the provisions of section 230.506(d) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations (or any successor thereto); and

(B) disqualify any offering or sale of securities by a person that—

(i) is subject to a final order of a covered regulator that—

(I) bars the person from—

(aa) association with an entity regulated by the covered regulator;

(bb) engaging in the business of securities, insurance, or banking; or

(cc) engaging in savings association or credit union activities; or

(II) constitutes a final order based on a violation of any law or regulation that prohibits fraudulent, manipulative, or deceptive conduct, if such final order was issued within the previous 10-year period; or

(ii) has been convicted of any felony or misdemeanor in connection with the purchase or sale of any security or involving the making of any false filing with the Commission.

(3) COVERED REGULATOR DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term "covered regulator" means—

(A) a State securities commission (or an agency or officer of a State performing like functions);

(B) a State authority that supervises or examines banks, savings associations, or credit unions;

(C) a State insurance commission (or an agency or officer of a State performing like functions);

(D) a Federal banking agency (as defined under section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act); and

(E) the National Credit Union Administration.

(c) EXEMPTION UNDER STATE REGULATIONS.—Section 18(b)(4) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77r(b)(4)) is amended—

(1) in subparagraph (F), by striking "or" at the end;

(2) in subparagraph (G), by striking the period and inserting "; or"; and

(3) by adding at the end the following:

"(H) section 4(a)(8).".

TITLE V—REGULATION A+ IMPROVEMENT

SEC. 2501. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Regulation A+ Improvement Act of 2023".

SEC. 2502. JOBS ACT-RELATED EXEMPTION.

Section 3(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77c(b)) is amended—

(1) in paragraph (2)(A), by striking "$50,000,000" and inserting "$150,000,000, adjusted for inflation by the Commission every 2 years to the nearest $10,000 to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics"; and

(2) in paragraph (5)—

(A) by striking "such amount as" and inserting: "such amount, in addition to the adjustment for inflation provided for under such paragraph (2)(A), as"; and

(B) by striking "such amount, it" and inserting "such amount, in addition to the adjustment for inflation provided for under such paragraph (2)(A), it".

TITLE VI—DEVELOPING AND EMPOWERING OUR ASPIRING LEADERS

SEC. 2601. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Developing and Empowering our Aspiring Leaders Act of 2023" or the "DEAL Act of 2023".

SEC. 2602. DEFINITIONS.

Not later than the end of the 180-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act, the Securities and Exchange Commission shall, to the extent such revisions facilitate capital formation without compromising investor protection—

(1) revise the definition of a qualifying investment under paragraph (c) of section 275.203(l)–1 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations—

(A) to include an equity security issued by a qualifying portfolio company, whether acquired directly from the company or in a secondary acquisition; and

(B) to specify that an investment in another venture capital fund is a qualifying investment under such definition; and

(2) revise paragraph (a) of such section to require, as a condition of a private fund qualifying as a venture capital fund under such paragraph, that the qualifying investments of the private fund are either—

(A) predominantly qualifying investments that were acquired directly from a qualifying portfolio company; or

(B) predominantly qualifying investments in another venture capital fund or other venture capital funds.

SEC. 2603. REPORTS.

(a) GAO REPORT.—The Comptroller General of the United States shall issue a report to Congress on the risks and impacts of concentrated sectoral counterparty risk in the banking sector, in light of the failure of Silicon Valley Bank.

(b) ADVOCATE FOR SMALL BUSINESS CAPITAL FORMATION REPORT.—The Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation shall issue a report to Congress and the Securities and Exchange Commission—

(1) examining the access to banking services for venture funds and companies funded by venture capital, in light of the failure of Silicon Valley Bank, especially those funds and companies located outside of the established technology and venture capital hubs of California, Massachusetts, and New York; and

(2) containing any policy recommendations of the Advocate.

TITLE VII—IMPROVING CROWDFUNDING OPPORTUNITIES

SEC. 2701. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Improving Crowdfunding Opportunities Act".

SEC. 2702. CROWDFUNDING REVISIONS.

(a) EXEMPTION FROM STATE REGULATION.—Section 18(b)(4)(A) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77r(b)(4)(A)) is amended by striking "pursuant to section" and all that follows through the semicolon at the end and inserting the following: "pursuant to—

"(i) section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m, 78o(d)); or

"(ii) section 4A(b) or any regulation issued under that section;".

(b) LIABILITY FOR MATERIAL MISSTATEMENTS AND OMISSIONS.—Section 4A(c) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77d–1(c)) is amended—

(1) by redesignating paragraph (3) as paragraph (4); and

(2) by inserting after paragraph (2) the following:

"(3) LIABILITY OF FUNDING PORTALS.—For the purposes of this subsection, a funding portal, as that term is defined in section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)), shall not be considered to be an issuer unless, in connection with the offer or sale of a security, the funding portal knowingly—

"(A) makes any untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state a material fact in order to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which they are made, not misleading; or

"(B) engages in any act, practice, or course of business which operates or would operate as a fraud or deceit upon any person.".

(c) APPLICABILITY OF BANK SECRECY ACT REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) SECURITIES ACT OF 1933.—Section 4A(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77d–1(a)) is amended—

(A) in paragraph (11), by striking "and" at the end;

(B) in paragraph (12), by striking the period at the end and inserting "; and"; and

(C) by adding at the end the following:

"(13) not be subject to the recordkeeping and reporting requirements relating to monetary instruments under subchapter II of chapter 53 of title 31, United States Code.".

(2) TITLE 31, UNITED STATES CODE.—Section 5312 of title 31, United States Code, is amended by striking subsection (c) and inserting the following:

"(c) ADDITIONAL CLARIFICATION.—The term 'financial institution' (as defined in subsection (a))—

"(1) includes any futures commission merchant, commodity trading advisor, or commodity pool operator registered, or required to register, under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.); and

"(2) does not include a funding portal, as that term is defined in section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)).".

(d) PROVISION OF IMPERSONAL INVESTMENT ADVICE AND RECOMMENDATIONS.—Section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)) is amended—

(1) by redesignating the second paragraph (80) (relating to funding portals) as paragraph (81); and

(2) in paragraph (81)(A), as so redesignated, by inserting after "recommendations" the following: "(other than by providing impersonal investment advice by means of written material, or an oral statement, that does not purport to meet the objectives or needs of a specific individual or account)".

(e) TARGET AMOUNTS OF CERTAIN EXEMPTED OFFERINGS.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall amend paragraph (t)(1) of section 227.201 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations so that such paragraph applies with respect to an issuer of-

fering or selling securities in reliance on section 4(a)(6) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77d(a)(6)) if—

(1) the offerings of such issuer, together with all other amounts sold under such section 4(a)(6) within the preceding 12-month period, have, in the aggregate, a target amount of more than $124,000 but not more than $250,000;

(2) the financial statements of such issuer that have either been reviewed or audited by a public accountant that is independent of the issuer are unavailable at the time of filing; and

(3) such issuer provides a statement that financial information certified by the principal executive officer of the issuer has been provided instead of financial statements reviewed by a public accountant that is independent of the issuer.

(f) EXEMPTION AVAILABLE TO INVESTMENT COMPANIES.—Section 4A(f) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77d–1(f)) is amended—

(1) in paragraph (2), by inserting "or" after the semicolon;

(2) by striking paragraph (3); and

(3) by redesignating paragraph (4) as paragraph (3).

(g) NON-ACCREDITED INVESTOR REQUIREMENTS.—Section 4(a)(6) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77d(a)(6))) is amended—

(1) in subparagraph (A), by striking "$1,000,000" and inserting "$10,000,000"; and

(2) in subparagraph (B), by striking "does not exceed" and all that follows through "more than $100,000" and inserting "does not exceed 10 percent of the annual income or net worth of such investor".

(h) TECHNICAL CORRECTION.—The Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.) is amended—

(1) by striking the term "section 4(6)" each place such term appears and inserting "section 4(a)(6)";

(2) by striking the term "section 4(6)(B)" each place such term appears and inserting "section 4(a)(6)(B)"; and

(3) in section 4A(f), by striking "Section 4(6)" and inserting "Section 4(a)(6)".

TITLE VIII—RESTORING THE SECONDARY TRADING MARKET

SEC. 2801. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Restoring the Secondary Trading Market Act".

SEC. 2802. EXEMPTION FROM STATE REGULATION.

Section 18(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77r(a)) is amended—

(1) in paragraph (2), by striking "or" at the end;

(2) in paragraph (3), by striking the period at the end and inserting "; or"; and

(3) by adding at the end the following:

"(4) shall directly or indirectly prohibit, limit, or impose any conditions upon the off-exchange secondary trading (as such term is defined by the Commission) in securities of an issuer that makes current information publicly available, including—

"(A) the information required in the periodic and current reports described under paragraph (b) of section 230.257 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations; or

"(B) the documents and information required with respect to Tier 2 offerings, as defined in section 230.251(a) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.".

DIVISION C—INCREASING ACCESS TO PRIVATE MARKETS

TITLE I—GIG WORKER EQUITY COMPENSATION

SEC. 3101. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Gig Worker Equity Compensation Act".

SEC. 3102. EXTENSION OF RULE 701.

(a) IN GENERAL.—The exemption provided under section 230.701 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, shall apply to individuals (other than employees) providing goods for sale, labor, or services for remuneration to either an issuer or to customers of an issuer to the same extent as such exemptions apply to employees of the issuer. For purposes of the previous sentence, the term "customers" may, at the election of an issuer, include users of the issuer's platform.

(b) ADJUSTMENT FOR INFLATION.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall annually adjust the dollar figure under section 230.701(e) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to reflect the percentage change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the Department of Labor.

(c) RULEMAKING.—The Securities and Exchange Commission—

(1) shall revise section 230.701 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, to reflect the requirements of this section; and

(2) may not revise such section 230.701 in any manner that would have the effect of restricting access to equity compensation for employees or individuals described under subsection (a).

SEC. 3103. PREEMPTION OF CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF STATE LAW.

Any provision of a State law with respect to wage rates or benefits that creates a presumption that an individual providing goods for sale, labor, or services for remuneration for a person is an employee of such person under such law is preempted.

SEC. 3104. GAO STUDY.

Not later than the end of the 3-year period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act, the Comptroller General of the United States shall carry out a study on the effects of this title and submit a report on such study to the Congress.

TITLE II—INVESTMENT OPPORTUNITY EXPANSION

SEC. 3201. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Investment Opportunity Expansion Act".

SEC. 3202. INVESTMENT THRESHOLDS TO QUALIFY AS AN ACCREDITED INVESTOR.

Section 2(a)(15) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(15)) is amended—

(1) by striking "(15) The term 'accredited investor' shall mean—" and inserting the following:

"(15) ACCREDITED INVESTOR.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—The term 'accredited investor' means—";

(2) in clause (i), by striking "or" at the end;

(3) in clause (ii), by striking the period at the end and inserting a semicolon; and

(4) by adding at the end the following:

"(iii) with respect to a proposed transaction, any individual whose aggregate investment, at the completion of such transaction, in securities with respect to which there has not been a public offering is not more than 10 percent of the greater of—

"(I) the net assets of the individual; or

"(II) the annual income of the individual;".

TITLE III—RISK DISCLOSURE AND INVESTOR ATTESTATION

SEC. 3301. SHORT TITLE.

This title may be cited as the "Risk Disclosure and Investor Attestation Act".

SEC. 3302. INVESTOR ATTESTATION.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Section 2(a)(15) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(15)), as amended by section 3202, is further amended by adding at the end the following:

"(iv) with respect to an issuer, any individual that has attested to the issuer that the individual understands the risks of investment in pri-

vate issuers, using such form as the Commission shall establish, by rule, but which form may not be longer than 2 pages in length; or".

(b) RULEMAKING.—Not later than the end of the 1-year period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act, the Securities and Exchange Commission shall issue rules to carry out the amendments made by subsection (a), including establishing the form required under such amendments.

TITLE IV—ACCREDITED INVESTORS INCLUDE INDIVIDUALS RECEIVING ADVICE FROM CERTAIN PROFESSIONALS

SEC. 3401. ACCREDITED INVESTORS INCLUDE INDIVIDUALS RECEIVING ADVICE FROM CERTAIN PROFESSIONALS.

(a) SECURITIES ACT OF 1933.—Section 2(a)(15) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(15)), as amended by sections 3202 and 3302, is further amended by adding at the end the following:

"(v) any individual receiving individualized investment advice or individualized investment recommendations with respect to the applicable transaction from an individual described under section 203.501(a)(10) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.

"(B) DEFINITIONS.—In subparagraph (A)(v):

"(i) INVESTMENT ADVICE.—The term 'investment advice' shall be interpreted consistently with the interpretation of the phrase 'engages in the business of advising others, either directly or through publications or writings, as to the value of securities or as to the advisability of investing in, purchasing, or selling securities' under section 202(a)(11) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b–2(a)(11)).

"(ii) INVESTMENT RECOMMENDATION.—The term 'investment recommendation' shall be interpreted consistently with the interpretation of the term 'recommendation' under section 240.15l-1 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.".

(b) CONFORMING CHANGES TO REGULATIONS.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall revise section 203.501(a) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, and any other definition of "accredited investor" in a rule of the Commission in the same manner as such definition is revised under subsection (a).

PURPOSE AND SUMMARY

Introduced on April 24, 2023, by Representative Patrick McHenry, H.R. 2799, the *Expanding Access to Capital Act*, would make reforms to the U.S. capital markets to strengthen public markets and make them more attractive, help small businesses and entrepreneurs raise capital, and increase access to private markets for investors.

BACKGROUND AND NEED FOR LEGISLATION

H.R. 2799 is comprised of the following 23 separate bills.

DIVISION A—STRENGTHENING PUBLIC MARKETS

Title I—the *Remove Aberrations in the Market Cap Test for Target Company Financial Statements,* was introduced on April 6, 2023, by Representative French Hill (R–AR).

Title I clarifies that a company's market capitalization, for purposes of testing the significance of an acquisition or disposition and determining whether a target company's financial statements are required, may include the value of all shares of stock, including preferred stock and non-traded common shares that are convertible into, or exchangeable for, traded common shares.

Background

Current law requires a company to include, in its prospectus, financial statements for acquisitions that are considered "significant." When using a market capitalization test (which is one of three tests used to determine whether an acquisition is significant enough to require target company financial statements), current requirements fail to account for the acquirer's full market capitalization by excluding from the calculation some classes of the acquirer's stock. This is inconsistent with the goal of the significance test, which was designed to ensure that the evaluation of significance for acquisitions and dispositions compares measures that are consistent with fair value. As a result, Title I clarifies that a company's market capitalization may include the value of all of the acquirer's outstanding classes of stock, including preferred stock and non-traded common shares that are convertible into or exchangeable for traded common shares (based on trading value, conversion value or exchange value, as applicable).

Title II—the *Helping Startups Continue to Grow Act,* was introduced on April 13, 2023, by Representative Bryan Steil (R–WI).

Title II provides an extension of certain exemptions and reduced disclosure requirements for companies that were EGCs and would continue to meet all other requirements for EGCs except for the five-year restriction. This title also increases the maximum threshold amounts to qualify as an EGC to $1.5 billion and removes the disqualification for large accelerated filers.

Background

Title I of the JOBS Act established a new category of issuers known as "Emerging Growth Companies" (EGCs), which currently must have less than $1.07 billion in annual revenues or $700 million in public float when they register with the SEC. These companies are given an "on ramp" of up to five years to comply with certain regulatory requirements prior to, throughout, and immediately after the company's IPO. By granting these issuers a temporary "on-ramp" status, Title I encourages small companies to go public while ensuring that they graduate to full regulatory compliance as they grow large enough to sustain the compliance infrastructure typical of mature companies.

The JOBS Act's IPO on-ramp succeeded by providing accommodations that streamlined the IPO process and promoted efficiency without compromising investor protection. The IPO on-ramp accommodations are limited, measured and based on analogous pre-existing principles or practices in federal securities regulation. Congress should build off this success, by (among other things) increasing the threshold amounts to qualify as an EGC, extending the maximum amount of time an issuer can remain an EGC, and removing the disqualification for large accelerated filers. The proposed enhancements to the IPO on-ramp represent a balanced approach to promote IPO activity without compromising investor protections, including all of the disclosure and liability requirements that continue to remain in place for all companies.

Title III—the *SEC and PCAOB Auditor Requirements for Newly Public Companies*, was introduced on April 13, 2023, by Representative Patrick McHenry (R–NC).

Title III updates the SEC and PCAOB auditor independence requirements to provide that the auditor of a private company that is transitioning to public company status (via IPO, spin-off or otherwise) must comply with SEC/PCAOB independence rules for the latest fiscal year, as long as the auditor is independent under AICPA or home-country standards for earlier periods.

Background

Congress should update the SEC and PCAOB auditor independence requirements to provide that the auditor of a private company that is transitioning to public company status (via IPO, spin-off or otherwise) must comply with SEC and PCAOB independence rules for the latest fiscal year, as long as the auditor is independent under AICPA or home-country standards for earlier periods. Requiring a private company's auditor to comply with SEC and PCAOB auditor independence rules for all prior years, rather than only the most recent year, can unnecessarily require hiring a different auditor to re-audit earlier periods even though the original auditor was independent under then-applicable standards.

As updated under this Title, the auditor of a private company that is transitioning to public company status (via IPO, spin-off or otherwise) may comply with SEC and PCAOB independence rules for the latest fiscal year, as long as the auditor is independent under AICPA or home-country standards for earlier periods. In scenarios where the auditor is independent under AICPA or home-country standards for earlier periods but the SEC and PCAOB independence rules imposes additional requirements, the auditor should be required to comply with SEC and PCAOB independence requirements only for the most recent year. The more demanding SEC and PCAOB standards should not apply to earlier periods where the auditor has complied with the relevant auditor independence rules that applied to the private company. Under this balanced approach, the auditor must still satisfy SEC/PCAOB independence requirements for the most recent audited year while AICPA or home-country standards are satisfactory for earlier periods.

Title IV—*Expand the Protection for Research Reports to Cover All Securities of All Issuers*, was introduced on April 13, 2023, by Representative Roger Williams (R–TX).

Title IV expands the provision for research reports in Section 2(a)(3) of the Securities Act to include research reports about any issuer that undertakes a proposed public offering of securities. The current provision only offers limited protection for EGC research reports by deeming them a non-offer.

Background

Title IV of the JOBS Act of 2012 attempted to promote publication of research reports about EGCs by deeming the reports a non-offer. Congress should update the provision to cover all securities of an EGC or any other issuer, as Title IV would do.

The current provision offers limited protection of research reports in the context of an EGC's proposed offering of its common equity securities. After a decade of marketplace experience, the provision governing EGC research reports has proved wholly successful. Research analysts remain subject to robust regulation, including SEC Regulation AC certification and conflict disclosure requirements, FINRA conduct and communications rules, and antifraud requirements. Based on this success, the research report provision warrants expansion, especially considering the importance of research reports to small issuers trying to increase stock liquidity or gain investors' recognition.

Title V—*a bill to exclude QIBs and IAAs From the Record Holder Count for Mandatory Registration*, was introduced on April 13, 2023, by Representative Patrick McHenry (R–NC).

Title V updates Section 12(g) of the Exchange Act to provide that the mandatory registration threshold of 2,000 or more holders of record shall exclude Qualified Institutional Buyers (QIBs) and institutional accredited investors.

Background

Section 12(g) of the Exchange Act, as updated by the JOBS Act, requires every issuer with more than $10 million in total assets and a class of equity security held of record by 2,000 or more persons (or 500 or more unaccredited investors) to register that class of equity security with the SEC. The updates to Section 12(g) in the JOBS Act, which accomplished an increase the record holder threshold, did not exclude large institutional investors, such as QIBs or institutional accredited investors. In the decade since the JOBS Act raised this threshold, experience has shown that institutional investors can be excluded from the record holder count. Therefore, Congress should update Section 12(g) to provide that the registration threshold of 2,000 or more holders of record shall exclude QIBs and institutional accredited investors.

Title VI—*a bill to expand WKSI Eligibility*, was introduced on April 13, 2023, by Representative Bryan Steil (R–WI).

This title expands the availability of Well-Known Seasoned Issuer (WKSI) status by updating the WKSI definition to apply to all companies that otherwise satisfy the WKSI definition with a public float of $250 million, rather than the current public float of $700 million.

Background

Congress should expand availability of WKSI status. Currently, WKSI status is unduly limited. As updated, the WKSI definition would apply to companies with a non-affiliate market capitalization, or public float, of $250 million, rather than the public float threshold of $700 million currently required for WKSI status. The last two decades of successful experience have shown that the WKSI category merits expansion. First, since the introduction of the WKSI definition nearly two decades ago, the automatic shelf registration process and other benefits available to WKSI issuers have significantly improved capital formation and market efficiency without compromising investor protection. When initially proposing

the WKSI category, the SEC acknowledged that a much lower float test for WKSI status could be appropriate. The last two decades of experience have demonstrated that to be the case. Second, for the last three decades, companies with a public float of $75 million have been able to engage in short-form registration of securities using the integrated disclosure system based on those companies' periodic reporting. As a result, Congress should require a much lower public float test for WKSI status.

Title VII—*Smaller Reporting Company, Accelerated Filer, and Large Accelerated Filer Thresholds*, was introduced on April 13, 2023, by Representative Blaine Luetkemeyer (R–MO).

This title, among other things, raises the thresholds and removes overlap in the definitions to qualify as a smaller reporting company, accelerated filer, and large accelerated filer. It also exempts certain low-revenue issuers from being required to have their management's assessment of the effectiveness of internal controls over financial reporting attested to, and reported on, by an independent auditor, as required by SOX Section 404(b).

Background

The SEC's Office of the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation's 2022 Annual Report's statistics relating to small exchange-listed companies (issuers with a market capitalization of $250 million or less) is stark. For example, in 1982, there were 4,144 U.S. small exchange-listed companies. The number declined to 3,140 by 2002, then to 1,415 in 2012 when the JOBS Act was enacted, and in June 2022 was 1,587. The aggregate market capitalization of these small exchange-listed companies as a proportion of the overall market has declined from 13% in 1982 to 0.4% in 2022—that is a remarkable decline.

The Report documents many of the issues encountered by smaller public companies, including the disproportionately high average annual costs to comply with the internal audits required by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act in Section 404(b). There is little evidence that the audits required in Section 404(b) affects the ultimate quality of financial reporting. Yet, the costs associated with the Section 404(b) attestation requirement are significant, have not declined over time, and are not scaled proportionately for smaller companies. As a result, these companies bear a disproportionately negative impact without a commensurate proven benefit from an investor protection perspective.

When the SEC most recently amended the definition of "smaller reporting company," it provided some relief for certain low-revenue companies from Section 404(b) attestation requirements, and there has been no evidence that this change resulted in any investor protection concerns. As a result of the amendments to the definition, smaller reporting companies with less than $100 million in revenues are exempt from the auditor attestation requirements under Section 404(b) and accelerated reporting deadlines. However, an issuer that qualifies as a smaller reporting company due to a public float between $75 million and $250 million, and has annual revenues in excess of $100 million, continues to be both a smaller reporting company and an accelerated filer, and therefore remains subject to the auditor attestation requirements under Section

404(b). As a result, this Title removes overlap and saves costs by exempting all smaller reporting companies from the Sarbanes-Oxley Section 404(b) attestation requirement.

DIVISION B—HELPING SMALL BUSINESSES AND ENTREPRENEURS

Title I—the *Unlocking Capital for Small Businesses Act*, was introduced on April 13, 2023, by Representative Andrew Garbarino (R–NY).

Title I would direct the SEC to finalize its 2020 proposed exemption from broker registration requirements for "finders" who help issuers raise capital in private markets from accredited investors.

Background

This Title would direct the SEC to finalize its 2020 proposed exemption from broker registration requirements for "finders" who help issuers raise capital in private markets from accredited investors.

Finders provide an important role in facilitating capital formation by making connections between small businesses and people who might want to invest in them. According to SEC Commissioner Hester Peirce, "the need for finders is particularly acute for early-stage small businesses, which often struggle to find cost-efficient ways to raise funds from people outside of their immediate friends and family group." For companies seeking to raise relatively small sums, securing venture capital financing, or enlisting the participation of a registered broker-dealer, is not a realistic possibility. As such, many issuers must rely on people within their local communities to help them raise capital. Under our current law, however, this behavior can easily get people in trouble. Thus, finalizing an exemption for "finders" would set clear parameters around this activity that is crucial to small businesses.

Title II—the *Small Business Investor Capital Access Act*, was introduced by Representative Andy Barr (R–KY) on April 13, 2023.

This title would amend the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 to increase the exemption from registration threshold for advisers to small private funds to reflect changes in inflation.

Background

The Dodd-Frank Act imposed mandates for private funds to register with the SEC and comply with new reporting requirements. Section 408 of the Dodd-Frank Act directed the SEC to provide an exemption from registration for advisers to private funds that have less than $150 million in assets under management. The SEC issued rules to implement that and other provisions in 2011. The $150 million threshold exempted smaller advisers to private funds from potentially burdensome regulatory requirements. However, the $150 million AUM threshold has not been changed since 2010 nor did Dodd-Frank include any type of inflation adjuster to that threshold. As a result, this Title adjusts the exemption from registration threshold for advisers to small private funds to reflect changes in inflation since 2010.

Title III—the *Improving Capital Allocation for Newcomers (ICAN) Act*, was introduced on April 20, 2023, by Representative William Timmons (R–SC).

This title would modify the Qualifying Venture Capital Fund Exemption under Section 3(c)(1) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 by increasing the cap on aggregate capital contributions and uncalled capital commitments from $10 million to $150 million. This title would also increase the allowable number of beneficial owners in a qualifying venture capital fund from 250 to 600.

Background

Venture capital (VC) plays a critical role in the American startup ecosystem. Once growth startups reach a certain size or level of maturity and need larger sums of capital to continue scaling or to prepare for going public, venture capital often provides an attractive path forward. Companies in well-known technology and venture hubs are generally successful in raising capital. However, entrepreneurs outside of these hubs in other parts of country face greater difficulties raising capital necessary for scaling.[1] In particular, founders outside of traditional VC locales specifically struggle raising Series A capital, usually $3 million to $10 million, which then propels them to more easily secure Series B funding from investors focused on growth.[2]

Underscoring these geographic barriers, three-quarters of venture capital goes to founders in just three states: California, Massachusetts, and New York.[3] Additionally, personal and network relationships remain the dominant source of VC deal flow.[4] For example, nearly 30 percent of founders who secured venture funding in 2019 had Ivy League degrees.[5] Despite record highs for total VC investments in 2020 and 2021, only 2.3 percent of venture dollars went to women-only founding teams in 2020 (down from 3.3 percent in 2019).[6]

To make matters worse, first-time fund managers and small funds have declined in both number and size, further reducing access to early-stage capital necessary for young companies, especially those outside of primary VC and tech hubs.[7] For upstart and smaller regional funds, taking on additional investors in a fund would pave the way to raise a more meaningful fund with more reach, while simultaneously encouraging diversification that reduces portfolio risk.[8] However, the current qualified venture capital fund size limit of $10 million under Section 3(c)(1) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 is prohibitively low. This prevents a

---

[1] *See* Letter from the SEC Small Business Capital Formation Advisory Committee to Chair Gensler (May 21, 2021), *available at* https://www.sec.gov/spotlight/sbcfac/encouraging-small-regional-funds-043021.pdf.

[2] *Id.*

[3] Start Us Up, America's New Business Plan (Dec. 3, 2021), *available at* https://www.startusupnow.org/wpcontent/uploads/sites/12/2021/03/AmericasNewBusinessPlan.pdf.

[4] *See* Office of the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation Annual Report for Fiscal Year 2021 (Dec. 2021), *available at* https://www.sec.gov/files/2021-OASB-Annual-Report.pdf.

[5] *Id.*

[6] *Id.*

[7] *See* Letter from the SEC Small Business Capital Formation Advisory Committee, *supra* note 1.

[8] *Id.*

fund from covering its operational costs without levying an immense fee on its investors.[9]

As recommended by the SEC Small Business Capital Formation Advisory Committee, Congress should increase the cap for qualified venture funds from $10 million to $150 million and increase the allowable number of investors from 250 to 600 under Section 3(c)(1).[10] Making it easier for VC funds to qualify for the exemption will support small and regional VC funds located outside of established VC hubs, thereby enabling these funds to be invested in more entrepreneurs in their own communities, many of whom may be minorities or women. This important policy change would undo the harmful effects of pattern matching, the practice of making investment decisions that mirror patterns of what a successful entrepreneur has looked like in the past.

Title IV—the *Small Entrepreneurs Empowerment and Development (SEED) Act*, was introduced on April 13, by Representative Patrick McHenry (R–NC).

Title IV would amend the Securities Act of 1933 to allow small issuers to conduct a micro-offering free of mandated disclosures or filings. Under this bill, issuers that conduct a micro-offering would remain subject to the antifraud provisions of the Federal securities laws.

Background

Micro-lending has a demonstrated track record around the world for providing much-needed capital to entrepreneurs—often women and minorities—in underbanked communities. This in turn helps them start and grow their businesses. Congress should use the micro-lending model to create a new micro-offering exemption free of mandated disclosures or offering filings to allow broader access to capital for emerging entrepreneurs and small businesses. Moreover, small businesses should be permitted to raise up to a certain small-dollar threshold each year (e.g., $250,000 or $500,000). At same time any new exemption should subject applicants to the antifraud provisions of the Federal securities laws and disqualify bad actors to ensure investor protections.

This exemption would especially help those small businesses hit particularly hard by the coronavirus and any shortage in bank lending. In 2020, minority entrepreneurs faced more pronounced difficulties in accessing debt financing, including loans, lines of credit, and cash advances. Specifically, 49 percent of Black entrepreneurs were denied debt financing. A simple and streamlined micro-offering exemption will reduce barriers to capital formation for underrepresented small businesses and entrepreneurs, many of which need different financing options than what is provided by traditional banks.

Title V—the *Regulation A+ Improvement Act*, was introduced on April 17, 2023, by Representative Erin Houchin (R–IN).

This title would increase the amount that companies can raise under Regulation A from $50 million to $150 million. It would also

[9] *Id.*
[10] *Id.*

require the Securities and Exchange Commission to adjust this amount for inflation every two years to the nearest $10,000.

Background

The JOBS Act directed the SEC to adopt rules to add a class of securities that would be exempt from the Securities Act registration requirements for offerings of securities of up to $50 million within a twelve-month period. These rules, commonly referred to as Regulation A+, increased the number of small companies that can access the capital markets under the existing Regulation A's registration exemption, which is available only to offerings under $5 million.

In March 2015, the SEC approved the final rule that provided for two tiers of Regulation A offerings: Tier 1, for offerings of securities of up to $20 million in a 12-month period, with not more than $6 million in offers by selling security-holders that are affiliates of the issuer; and Tier 2, for offerings of securities of up to $50 million in a 12-month period, with not more than $15 million in offers by selling security-holders that are affiliates of the issuer. Both tiers are subject to certain basic requirements while Tier 2 offerings are also subject to additional disclosure and ongoing reporting requirements. The final rule also provided for the preemption of state securities law registration and qualification requirements for securities offered or sold to "qualified purchasers" in Tier 2 offerings. In 2020, the SEC adopted amendments raising the offering cap for Tier 2 offerings from $50 million to $75 million and raised the offering cap for secondary sales under Tier 2 from $15 million to $22.5 million. Committee Republicans believe that Congress can help small businesses raise capital, without being subject to burdensome IPO compliance requirements, by raising the cap on Regulation A+ offerings to $150 million.

Title VI, the *Developing and Empowering our Aspiring Leaders (DEAL)* Act, was introduced on April 13, 2023, by Representative Andy Barr (R–KY).

This title requires the Securities and Exchange Commission (the SEC) to revise the definition of a qualifying investment, for purposes of the exemption from registration for venture capital fund advisers under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. The revised definition is to include an equity security issued by a qualifying portfolio company. It also requires the SEC to revise the definition of a qualifying investment to include an investment in another venture capital fund. The SEC must make both revisions to facilitate capital formation without compromising investor protection.

The title also requires the GAO to study the impacts of concentrated sectoral counterparty risk in the banking sector in light of the failure of Silicon Valley Bank. Additionally, the SEC's Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation must issue a report on access to banking services for venture funds and companies funded by venture capital, especially those funds and companies located outside of the established technology and venture capital hubs of California, Massachusetts, and New York.

Background

Founders of portfolio companies often rely on early-stage investors for hands-on support, participation in board meetings, and developing customer acquisition strategies.[11] Location and proximity to portfolio companies are key factors for early-stage investors when assessing investment opportunities.[12] Likewise, the number of companies the investor can reasonably and actively advise constrains the number of their investments. As such, larger venture capital (VC) funds typically invest larger amounts in several later-stage companies, whereas smaller funds generally invest smaller amounts in a proportionate number of early-stage companies.[13]

A "fund of funds" model, in which a larger fund invests in smaller, regional funds, would mobilize capital previously reserved for late-stage investments and support smaller companies in aspiring startup hubs. The current limitations on exempt reporting advisers' qualifying investments render this model unworkable due to the competing demands on the 20 percent non-qualifying basket. This includes public offering obligations and secondary liquidity for founders.[14]

Title VI amends the "venture capital fund" definition under Rule 203(l)–1 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 to allow VC "fund of funds" investments by treating an investment in another VC fund—which meets the Rule 203(l)–1 requirements itself—as a "qualifying investment."[15] By allowing large VC funds to deploy more capital to smaller funds, this change will facilitate a more diverse pool of VC funds providing capital to a more diverse pool of founders located outside of the usual VC and tech destinations.

Additionally, by allowing VC funds to acquire more shares from founders and early investors, Title VI will drive capital to emerging VC funds while avoiding the costs and hurdles of fund registration, providing liquidity and improving returns. This will allow early-stage investors to deploy that capital as new investments in additional American startups.

Title VII—the *Improving Crowdfunding Opportunities Act*, was introduced by Representative Patrick McHenry (R–NC) on April 13, 2023.

Title VII preempts state regulation of secondary transactions involving crowdfunding vehicles and clarifies legal liability for crowdfunding portals. It also increases the allowable aggregate amount companies can raise in any 12-month period from $5 million to $10 million and allows all non-accredited investors to invest up to 10% of the greater of their annual income or net worth. Finally, this bill allows investment companies to participate in crowdfunding offerings and increases the offering size threshold under which an issuer may meet its financial statement requirements.

---

[11] *Id.*
[12] *Id.*
[13] *Id.*
[14] *Id.*
[15] *Id.*

Background

The JOBS Act exempted securities issued through crowdfunding platforms from SEC registration requirements. At the time, crowdfunding was a new and innovative way for startups and small businesses to raise capital, typically over the Internet. Crowdfunding campaigns generally specify a target amount to be raised and identify the purpose for which those funds will be used. Then, entities or individuals engaged in a crowdfunding campaign typically seek small contributions from a large number of investors to reach their fundraising targets.

In implementing the Reg CF rulemaking, the SEC turned what had been a few pages of legislative text into 685 pages of complicated rule release. Despite added complexity emanating from a botch SEC-rulemaking, the number and size of Regulation Crowdfunding offerings continues to increase, creating new jobs and benefiting communities outside traditional capital raising hubs. In fact, as of June 2022, 160,000 workers were employed by businesses that raised funds under Regulation Crowdfunding. Nevertheless, reforms are needed to ensure Regulation Crowdfunding remains an attractive capital raising option for small businesses and entrepreneurs.

Specifically, to simplify the crowdfunding exemption and increase its usefulness, Congress should preempt state regulation of secondary transactions involving crowdfunding vehicles and clarify legal liability for crowdfunding portals. Additionally, Congress should increase the allowable aggregate amount companies can raise in any 12-month period from $5 million to $10 million and allows all non-accredited investors to invest up to 10% of the greater of their annual income or net worth. Finally, Congress should allow investment companies to participate in crowdfunding offerings and increase the offering size threshold under which an issuer may meet its financial statement requirements.

Title VIII—the *Restoring the Secondary Trading Market Act*, was introduced by Representative Dan Meuser (R–PA) on April 6, 2023.

Title VIII would amend the Securities Act of 1933 to preempt State blue sky laws for off-exchange secondary trading in companies that make available current public information, including information required by Regulation A.

Background

There are two types of markets to invest in securities—primary markets and secondary markets. The primary market is where companies sell new securities to investors for the first time, usually through an initial public offering. The secondary market is where investors buy and sell securities from other investors. When people refer to the "stock market," they are referring to the secondary market. These secondary market transactions can take place on-exchange or off-exchange. The New York Stock Exchange and the NASDAQ are examples of on-exchange secondary markets. Off-exchange transactions are carried out directly between two parties, without the supervision of an exchange.

The sale of securities is regulated both on the federal and state levels. "Blue Sky Laws" are state securities regulations that,

among other things, seek to alleviate fraud. "Blue Sky Laws" originated in the early 1900s, decades before Congress passed the federal securities acts, from concerns that investors need to be protected from highly speculative or fraudulent investment schemes. By 1933, when Congress began regulating securities, most states had "Blue Sky Laws." Thus, securities regulation in the U.S. consisted of a nationwide patchwork of federal and state securities laws, which often duplicated each other. As securities markets grew and became more complex, the federal and state laws that regulate them became more complex and burdensome as well.

While there have been efforts to provide greater clarity and uniformity between federal and state laws by providing exemptions from certain "Blue Sky Laws," federal and state securities regulation remains a burdensome patchwork system. As a result, this Title prevents states from prohibiting, limiting, or imposing any conditions upon the off-exchange secondary trading markets in securities of an issuer that makes current information publicly available.

DIVISION C—INCREASING ACCESS TO PRIVATE MARKETS

Title I—the *Gig Worker Equity Compensation Act*, was introduced by Representative Patrick McHenry (R–NC) on April 13, 2023.

This title would expand Securities Act Rule 701 to allow gig workers to receive equity compensation for their services or goods. This legislation would also preempt state law to prevent gig workers from being presumed as employees due to their wage rates or offered benefits.

Background

Today, more than a quarter of the U.S. workforce participate in the gig economy or non-traditional work—whether that's as a rideshare driver, food delivery courier, or sharing their property through a platform like Airbnb—in some capacity. Additionally, about 5 percent of workers rely on alternative work arrangements, like gig work, for their primary source of income. These workers represent an increasing number of Americans that do not want to be bound by constraints like an office, set hours, or a traditional employer-employee relationship.

Congress should direct the SEC to expand Securities Act Rule 701 to include gig workers in the category of workers who are able to benefit from equity compensation, helping them share in our economic resurgence, while preserving the flexibility and independence that is so critical to Americans working in the gig economy. By giving these non-traditional workers access to equity compensation—just like traditional employees—we can ensure they benefit from the growth of the companies they are making successful.

Title II—the *Investment Opportunity Expansion Act*, was introduced by Representative Alexander Mooney (R–WV) on April 17, 2023.

This title would expand the "accredited investor" definition to include individuals who invest 10% or less of the greater of their net assets or annual income in a private offering.

Background

Investments in private markets are largely reserved for accredited investors who are mostly institutional investors or individuals that meet specific income or net worth requirements. To qualify as an accredited investor, an individual must have an annual income of at least $200,000 (or $300,000 with a spouse) for each of the previous two years or a net worth of over $1 million (either alone or with a spouse). According to SEC estimates, only 13 percent of U.S. households qualified as accredited investors in 2016.

The accredited investor definition is intended to limit private market investments to only those investors who are considered "sophisticated." However, using wealth as a proxy for determining sophistication excludes a large pool of investors who may have other types of expertise or experience. Congress should update the accredited investor definition to include more individuals who have historically been relegated to the investing sidelines. One such way is to allow any individual to invest up to an aggregate of 10% of the greater of their assets or income in private offerings. This approach would expand access to wealth, creating opportunities in private markets, while ensuring investor protection by limiting the amount investors may lose.

Title III—the *Risk Disclosure and Investor Attestation Act*, was introduced by Representative Warren Davidson (R–OH) on March 14, 2023.

This title would amend the Securities Act of 1933 to permit an individual to invest in private issuers upon acknowledging the investment risks.

Background

As noted in Title II above, using wealth as a proxy for determining sophistication excludes a large pool of investors who may have other types of expertise or experience. As a result, this title expands access by allowing investors to certify they understand the risks involved in investing in private markets.

Title IV—the *Accredited Investors Include Individuals Receiving Advice From Certain Professionals Act*, was introduced by Representative Patrick McHenry (R–NC) on April 20, 2023.

This title would expand the "accredited investor" definition to include individuals receiving individualized investment advice or individualized investment recommendations with respect to a private offering from a professional who qualifies as an accredited investor.

Background

Adding advised individuals to the accredited investor definition remedies an inconsistency in the current regulation. The accredited investor definition deems certain investment adviser and broker-dealer representatives sophisticated enough to make their own investments in private offerings. Yet, ordinary investors who may seek advice from those sophisticated individuals are excluded from the same investment opportunities.

In addition, reliance on advice is already conceptually present in Regulation D, which permits a limited number of non-accredited investors to purchase a Rule 506(b) offering if, individually or to-

gether with a "purchaser representative," they have enough knowledge and experience to evaluate the merits and risks of the prospective investment. This allowance has been used sparingly because there is uncertainty as to how to judge an investor's knowledge and experience and because issuers are required to provide additional information to any nonaccredited investors who may participate in the offering. But where an investor's adviser is judged to be sophisticated by the SEC's own rules, a broader reach is appropriate. The adviser is presumed to have the ability to evaluate the merits and risks of the prospective investment for his own account and to invest without any regulatorily required additional disclosure. Other investors should be permitted to access the adviser's skills to invest in private offerings. Moreover, many of these interactions will be subject to fiduciary duties or the best interest standard, depending on the representative's relationship with the client, providing an additional layer of investor protection.

This type of change to the accredited investor definition is simple to implement and gives investors control over their own circumstances. While it may impose additional costs to investing, obtaining an adviser is a far easier path to accreditation than any alternative currently available to ordinary investors, including obtaining securities credentials or amassing wealth. Such a rule change may also encourage specialization by advisers in raising capital for underrepresented small businesses, including those serving the adviser's own community.

HEARINGS

Pursuant to clause 3(c)(6) of rule XIII, the following hearing was used to develop H.R. 2799: The Subcommittee on Capital Markets of the Committee on Financial Services held a hearing on February 8, 2023, titled "Empowering Entrepreneurs: Removing Barriers to Capital Access for Small Businesses."

The following hearing was used to develop H.R. 2799: The Subcommittee on Capital Markets of the Committee on Financial Services held a hearing on February 8, 2023, titled "Sophistication or Discrimination? How the Accredited Investor Definition Unfairly Limits Investment Access for the Non-wealthy and the Need for Reform."

The following hearing was used to develop H.R. 2799: The Subcommittee on Capital Markets of the Committee on Financial Services held a hearing on March 9, 2023, titled "U.S. Public Markets Built for the 21st Century: Exploring Reforms to Make Our Public Markets Attractive for Small and Emerging Companies Raising Capital."

The following hearing was used to develop H.R. 2799: The Subcommittee on Capital Markets of the Committee on Financial Services held a hearing on April 19, 2023, titled "A Roadmap for Growth: Reforms to Encourage Capital Formation and Investment Opportunities for All Americans."

COMMITTEE CONSIDERATION

The Committee on Financial Services met in open session on April 26, 2023, and ordered H.R. 2799 to be reported favorably to the House as amended by a recorded vote of 28 ayes to 21 nays

(Record vote no. FC–50), a quorum being present. Before the question was called to order the bill favorably reported, the Committee adopted an amendment in the nature of a substitute offered by Mr. McHenry by voice vote.

COMMITTEE VOTES

Clause 3(b) of rule XIII of the Rules of the House of Representatives requires the Committee to list the record votes on the order to report legislation and amendments thereto. H.R. 2799 was ordered reported favorably to the House as amended by a recorded vote of 28 ayes to 21 nays (Record vote no. FC–50), a quorum being present.

An amendment offered by Ms. Garcia, no. 1, was not agreed to by a recorded vote of 20 ayes to 29 nays (Record vote no. FC–47).

An amendment offered by Ms. Waters, no. 2, was not agreed to by a recorded vote of 21 ayes to 28 nays (Record vote no. FC–48).

An amendment offered by Mr. Green, no. 3, was not agreed to by a recorded vote of 20 ayes to 28 nays (Record vote no. FC–49).

Record vote no. FC- 50

Representative	Yea	Nay	Present	Representative	Yea	Nay	Present
Mr. McHenry	X	___	___	Ms. Waters	___	X	___
Mr. Hill	X	___	___	Mrs. Velázquez	___	X	___
Mr. Lucas	X	___	___	Mr. Sherman	___	X	___
Mr. Sessions	X	___	___	Mr. Meeks	___	___	___
Mr. Posey	___	___	___	Mr. Scott	___	X	___
Mr. Luetkemeyer	X	___	___	Mr. Lynch	___	X	___
Mr. Huizenga	X	___	___	Mr. Green	___	X	___
Mrs. Wagner	X	___	___	Mr. Cleaver	___	X	___
Mr. Barr	X	___	___	Mr. Himes	___	X	___
Mr. Williams (TX)	X	___	___	Mr. Foster	___	X	___
Mr. Emmer	X	___	___	Mrs. Beatty	___	___	___
Mr. Loudermilk	X	___	___	Mr. Vargas	___	X	___
Mr. Mooney	X	___	___	Mr. Gottheimer	___	X	___
Mr. Davidson	X	___	___	Mr. Gonzalez	___	X	___
Mr. Rose	X	___	___	Mr. Casten	___	X	___
Mr. Steil	X	___	___	Ms. Pressley	___	X	___
Mr. Timmons	X	___	___	Mr. Horsford	___	X	___
Mr. Norman	X	___	___	Ms. Tlaib	___	X	___
Mr. Meuser	X	___	___	Mr. Torres	___	X	___
Mr. Fitzgerald	X	___	___	Ms. Garcia	___	X	___
Mr. Garbarino	X	___	___	Ms. Williams (GA)	___	X	___
Mrs. Kim	X	___	___	Mr. Nickel	___	X	___
Mr. Donalds	X	___	___	Ms. Pettersen	___	X	___
Mr. Flood	X	___	___				
Mr. Lawler	X	___	___				
Mr. Nunn	X	___	___				
Ms. De La Cruz	X	___	___				
Mrs. Houchin	X	___	___				
Mr. Ogles	X	___	___				

Record vote no. FC- 47

Representative	Yea	Nay	Present	Representative	Yea	Nay	Present
Mr. McHenry	___	X	___	Ms. Waters	X	___	___
Mr. Hill	___	X	___	Mrs. Velázquez	X	___	___
Mr. Lucas	___	X	___	Mr. Sherman	X	___	___
Mr. Sessions	___	X	___	Mr. Meeks	___	___	___
Mr. Posey	___	___	___	Mr. Scott	X	___	___
Mr. Luetkemeyer	___	X	___	Mr. Lynch	X	___	___
Mr. Huizenga	___	X	___	Mr. Green	X	___	___
Mrs. Wagner	___	X	___	Mr. Cleaver	X	___	___
Mr. Barr	___	X	___	Mr. Himes	___	X	___
Mr. Williams (TX)	___	X	___	Mr. Foster	X	___	___
Mr. Emmer	___	X	___	Mrs. Beatty	___	___	___
Mr. Loudermilk	___	X	___	Mr. Vargas	X	___	___
Mr. Mooney	___	X	___	Mr. Gottheimer	X	___	___
Mr. Davidson	___	X	___	Mr. Gonzalez	X	___	___
Mr. Rose	___	X	___	Mr. Casten	X	___	___
Mr. Steil	___	X	___	Ms. Pressley	X	___	___
Mr. Timmons	___	X	___	Mr. Horsford	X	___	___
Mr. Norman	___	X	___	Ms. Thaib	X	___	___
Mr. Meuser	___	X	___	Mr. Torres	X	___	___
Mr. Fitzgerald	___	X	___	Ms. Garcia	X	___	___
Mr. Garbarino	___	X	___	Ms. Williams (GA)	X	___	___
Mrs. Kim	___	X	___	Mr. Nickel	X	___	___
Mr. Donalds	___	X	___	Ms. Pettersen	X	___	___
Mr. Flood	___	X	___				
Mr. Lawler	___	X	___				
Mr. Nunn	___	X	___				
Ms. De La Cruz	___	X	___				
Mrs. Houchin	___	X	___				
Mr. Ogles	___	X	___				

Record vote no. FC- 48

Representative	Yea	Nay	Present	Representative	Yea	Nay	Present
Mr. McHenry	___	X	___	Ms. Waters	X	___	___
Mr. Hill	___	X	___	Mrs. Velázquez	X	___	___
Mr. Lucas	___	X	___	Mr. Sherman	X	___	___
Mr. Sessions	___	X	___	Mr. Meeks	___	___	___
Mr. Posey	___	___	___	Mr Scott	X	___	___
Mr. Luetkemeyer	___	X	___	Mr. Lynch	X	___	___
Mr. Huizenga	___	X	___	Mr. Green	X	___	___
Mrs. Wagner	___	X	___	Mr. Cleaver	X	___	___
Mr. Barr	___	X	___	Mr. Himes	X	___	___
Mr. Williams (TX)	___	X	___	Mr. Foster	X	___	___
Mr. Emmer	___	X	___	Mrs. Beatty	___	___	___
Mr. Loudermilk	___	X	___	Mr. Vargas	X	___	___
Mr. Mooney	___	X	___	Mr. Gottheimer	X	___	___
Mr. Davidson	___	X	___	Mr. Gonzalez	X	___	___
Mr. Rose	___	X	___	Mr. Casten	X	___	___
Mr. Steil	___	X	___	Ms. Pressley	X	___	___
Mr. Timmons	___	X	___	Mr. Horsford	X	___	___
Mr. Norman	___	X	___	Ms. Thaib	X	___	___
Mr. Meuser	___	X	___	Mr. Torres	X	___	___
Mr. Fitzgerald	___	X	___	Ms. Garcia	X	___	___
Mr. Garbarino	___	X	___	Ms. Williams (GA)	X	___	___
Mrs. Kim	___	X	___	Mr. Nickel	X	___	___
Mr. Donalds	___	X	___	Ms. Pettersen	X	___	___
Mr. Flood	___	X	___				
Mr. Lawler	___	X	___				
Mr. Nunn	___	X	___				
Ms. De La Cruz	___	X	___				
Mrs. Houchin	___	X	___				
Mr. Ogles	___	X	___				

Record vote no. FC- 49

Representative	Yea	Nay	Present	Representative	Yea	Nay	Present
Mr. McHenry	___	X	___	Ms. Waters	X	___	___
Mr. Hill	___	X	___	Mrs. Velázquez	X	___	___
Mr. Lucas	___	X	___	Mr. Sherman	X	___	___
Mr. Sessions	___	X	___	Mr. Meeks	___	___	___
Mr. Posey	___	___	___	Mr Scott	X	___	___
Mr. Luetkemeyer	___	X	___	Mr. Lynch	X	___	___
Mr. Huizenga	___	X	___	Mr. Green	X	___	___
Mrs. Wagner	___	X	___	Mr. Cleaver	X	___	___
Mr. Barr	___	X	___	Mr. Himes	X	___	___
Mr. Williams (TX)	___	X	___	Mr. Foster	X	___	___
Mr. Emmer	___	X	___	Mrs. Beatty	___	___	___
Mr. Loudermilk	___	X	___	Mr. Vargas	X	___	___
Mr. Mooney	___	X	___	Mr. Gottheimer	___	___	___
Mr. Davidson	___	X	___	Mr. Gonzalez	X	___	___
Mr. Rose	___	X	___	Mr. Casten	X	___	___
Mr. Steil	___	X	___	Ms. Pressley	X	___	___
Mr. Timmons	___	X	___	Mr. Horsford	X	___	___
Mr. Norman	___	X	___	Ms. Tlaib	X	___	___
Mr. Meuser	___	X	___	Mr. Torres	X	___	___
Mr. Fitzgerald	___	X	___	Ms. Garcia	X	___	___
Mr. Garbarino	___	X	___	Ms. Williams (GA)	X	___	___
Mrs. Kim	___	X	___	Mr. Nickel	X	___	___
Mr. Donalds	___	X	___	Ms. Pettersen	X	___	___
Mr. Flood	___	X	___				
Mr. Lawler	___	X	___				
Mr. Nunn	___	X	___				
Ms. De La Cruz	___	X	___				
Mrs. Houchin	___	X	___				
Mr. Ogles	___	X	___				

COMMITTEE OVERSIGHT FINDINGS

Pursuant to clause 3(c) of rule XIII of the Rules of the House of Representatives, the findings and recommendations of the Committee based on oversight activities under clause 2(b)(1) of rule X of the Rules of the House of Representatives, are incorporated in the descriptive portions of this report.

PERFORMANCE GOALS AND OBJECTIVES

Pursuant to clause 3(c)(4) of rule XIII of the Rules of the House of Representatives, the goal of H.R. 2799 is to build on the success of the JOBS Act of 2012 to right-size onerous regulatory barriers that make U.S. public markets less attractive, ensure that entrepreneurs of all sizes can access needed capital, and expand investment access to private markets in a safe and structured manner.

CONGRESSIONAL BUDGET OFFICE ESTIMATES

Pursuant to clause 3(d)(1) of rule XIII of the Rules of the House of Representatives, the Committee adopts as its own the cost estimate prepared by the Director of the Congressional Budget Office, pursuant to section 402 of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974:

H.R. 2799, Expanding Access to Capital Act of 2023
As ordered reported by the House Committee on Financial Services on April 26, 2023

By Fiscal Year, Millions of Dollars	2023	2023-2028	2023-2033
Direct Spending (Outlays)	*	*	*
Revenues	*	*	*
Increase or Decrease (-) in the Deficit	*	*	*
Spending Subject to Appropriation (Outlays)	*	1	not estimated

Increases *net direct spending* in any of the four consecutive 10-year periods beginning in 2034?	No	Statutory pay-as-you-go procedures apply?	Yes
		Mandate Effects	
Increases *on-budget deficits* in any of the four consecutive 10-year periods beginning in 2034?	No	Contains intergovernmental mandate?	Yes, Under Threshold
		Contains private-sector mandate?	Yes, Under Threshold

* = between -$500,000 and $500,000.

H.R 2799 would require the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) to issue rules that decrease reporting and registration requirements for companies, brokers, and advisors and increase investment opportunities for individuals. For example, the bill would change the definition of emerging growth company to include businesses with annual gross revenues below $1.5 billion in the prior year. Under current law, the SEC allows those companies to issue less extensive disclosures than it requires from larger companies. The hill also would exempt companies that sell less than $250,000 in securities in a year from registering those transactions with the SEC and allow more people to purchase securities that are exempt from registration requirements.

In addition, H.R. 2799 would modify the application of rules established by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board

(PCAOB) concerning the independence of auditors. Finally, the bill would require the Government Accountability Office (GAO) to issue two reports.

Using information from the SEC about similar rulemakings, CBO estimates that it would cost the commission $8 million over the 2023–2024 period to issue the new rules. CBO expects that the SEC would need 36 employees over varying periods to issue rules of differing complexity. CBO estimates that the average annual cost per employee would be $300,000 in 2024. However, because the SEC is authorized to collect fees to offset its annual appropriations, CBO estimates that the net effect on discretionary spending over the 2023–2028 period would be negligible, assuming appropriation actions consistent with that authority.

CBO estimates that it would cost GAO $1 million to complete the two required studies; that spending would be subject to the availability of appropriated funds.

Finally, CBO expects that the PCAOB would spend an insignificant amount in 2024 to amend its rules to classify auditors for current or prospective public companies as independent if they meet the standards of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants or a comparable foreign body. The PCAOB is authorized to assess fees (which are recorded in the budget as revenues) to offset its operating costs (which are recorded as direct spending). CBO estimates that enacting H.R. 2799 would have a negligible effect on the deficit.

H.R. 2799 would impose mandates as defined in the Unfunded Mandates Reform Act (UMRA). CBO estimates that the costs to comply with the intergovernmental and private-sector mandates would not exceed the thresholds established in UMRA ($99 million and $198 million in 2023, respectively, adjusted annually for inflation).

The bill would preempt some state and local laws governing private placement brokers, people assisting issuers with raising capital in private markets, crowdfunding, funding portals, gig workers (not employees), and some secondary market transactions. Although the preemptions would limit the application of state and local laws, it would impose no duty on state or local governments that would result in significant spending or loss of revenues.

If the SEC and the PCAOB increased fees to offset the costs of implementing the bill, H.R. 2799 would increase the cost of an existing mandate on private entities required to pay those assessments. CBO estimates that the incremental cost of the mandate would be below $10 million.

The CBO staff contacts for this estimate are David Hughes (for federal costs) and Rachel Austin (for mandates). The estimate was reviewed by H. Samuel Papenfuss, Deputy Director of Budget Analysis.

PHILLIP L. SWAGEL,
Director, Congressional Budget Office.

NEW BUDGET AUTHORITY, ENTITLEMENT AUTHORITY, AND TAX EXPENDITURES

Pursuant to clause 3(c)(2) of rule XIII of the Rules of the House of Representatives, the Committee adopts as its own the estimate

of new budget authority, entitlement authority, or tax expenditures or revenues contained in the cost estimate prepared by the Director of the Congressional Budget Office, pursuant to section 402 of the Congressional Budget Act of 1973.

FEDERAL MANDATES STATEMENT

The Committee adopts as its own the estimate of the Federal mandates prepared by the Director of the Congressional Budget Office pursuant to section 423 of the Unfunded Mandates Reform Act.

ADVISORY COMMITTEE STATEMENT

No advisory committees within the meaning of section 5(b) of the Federal Advisory Committee Act were created by this legislation.

APPLICABILITY TO LEGISLATIVE BRANCH

The Committee finds that the legislation does not relate to the terms and conditions of employment or access to public services or accommodations within the meaning of section 102(b)(3) of the Congressional Accountability Act.

EARMARK IDENTIFICATION

With respect to clause 9 of rule XXI of the Rules of the House of Representatives, the Committee has carefully reviewed the provisions of the bill and states that the provisions of the bill do not contain any congressional earmarks, limited tax benefits, or limited tariff benefits within the meaning of the rule.

DUPLICATION OF FEDERAL PROGRAMS

Pursuant to clause 3(c)(5) of rule XIII of the Rules of the House of Representatives, the Committee states that no provision of the bill establishes or reauthorizes a program of the Federal Government known to be duplicative of another Federal program, including any program that was included in a report to Congress pursuant to section 21 of the Public Law 111–139 or the most recent Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance.

SECTION-BY-SECTION ANALYSIS OF THE LEGISLATION

Section 1. Short title

This section cites H.R. 2799 as the "Expanding Access to Capital Act of 2023". This section also provides the table of contents for the separate bills that make up H.R. 2799.

DIVISION A. STRENGTHENING PUBLIC MARKETS

Title I. Remove Aberrations in the Market Cap Test for Target Company Financial Statements

Section 1101. Avoiding aberrational results in requirements for acquisition and disposition financial statements

This section amends title 17 of the Code of Federal Regulations to permit a registrant, in determining the significance of an acquisition or disposition described in section 210.1–02(w)(1)(i)(A), to calculate the aggregate market value based on the applicable trading

value, conversion value, or exchange value of all the registrants outstanding classes of stock (including preferred stock and non-traded common shares) and not just the common equity of the registrant.

Title II. Helping Startups Continue to Grow

Section 1201. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Helping Startups Continue to Grow Act".

Section 1202. Emerging Growth Company Criteria

This section amends Section 2(a)(19) of the Securities Act and Section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act by increasing the threshold to qualify as an emerging growth company (EGC) to $1.5 billion and by extending EGC status to 7 years. This section also removes the large accelerated filer disqualification from being an EGC.

Title III. SEC and PCAOB Auditor Requirements for Newly Public Companies

Section 1301. Auditor independence for certain past audits occurring before an issuer is a public company

This section amends Section 103 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act by noting that an issuer that is a public company or that has filed a registration statement to become a public company, the auditor independence rules established by the Board with respect to audits occurring before the last fiscal year of the issuer before it filed a registration statement to become a public company shall treat an auditor as independent if the auditor is independent under standard established by the AICPA in the U.S. or with respect to a foreign issuer, the auditor is independent under comparable standards applicable to the certified public accountants in the issuer's home country.

Title IV. Expand the Protection for Research Reports to Cover All Securities of All Issuers

Section 1401. Provision of research

This section amends Section 2(a)(3) of the Securities Act to include research reports about any issuer, not just emerging growth companies (EGCs), that undertakes a proposed public offering of securities.

Title V. Exclude QIBs and IAAs From the Record Holder Count for Mandatory Registration

Section 1501. Exclusions from mandatory registration threshold

This section amends Section 12(g)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act by removing qualified institutional buyers and institutional accredited investors from the record holder count under Section 12(g).

Title VI. Expand WKSI Eligibility

Section 1601. Definition of Well-Known Seasoned Issuer

This section amends the definition of a well-known seasoned issuer to include an issuer if the aggregate market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates is $250 million or more and the issuer otherwise satisfies the requirements of the definition of "well-known seasoned issuer".

Title VII. Smaller Reporting Company, Accelerated Filer, and Large Accelerated Filer Thresholds

Section 1701. Smaller reporting company, accelerated filer, and large accelerated filer thresholds

This section amends the definition of a smaller reporting company by adjusting the public float thresholds from $250 million to $500 million and adjusting the annual revenue threshold from $100 million to $250 million and either no public float or a public float of less than $900 million (rather than $700 million). This section also revised the definition of a large accelerated filer by adjusting the public float from $700 million to $750 million. In addition, this section increased the threshold to exit accelerated filer status from $60 million to $75 million and the threshold to exit large accelerated filer status from $560 million to $750 million. Lastly, this section revises the definition of accelerated filer and large accelerated filer to exclude smaller reporting companies.

DIVISION B. HELPING SMALL BUSINESSES AND ENTREPRENEURS

Title I. Unlocking Capital For Small Businesses

Section 2101. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Unlocking Capital for Small Businesses Act of 2023".

Section 2102. Safe harbors for private placement brokers and finders

This section amends the Securities Exchange Act to provide an exemption from broker registration requirements for "finders'" who help issuers raise capital in private markets from accredited investors. In particular, this section requires the SEC to promulgate rules with respect to private placement brokers that are no more stringent than those imposed on funding portals and that require the rules of any national securities association to allow a private placement broker to become a member of such association subject to reduced membership requirements. In addition this section requires the private placement broker to disclose clearly and conspicuously, in writing, to all parities to the transaction as a result of the broker's activities that the broker is acting as a private placement broker, the amount of payment for services rendered in connection with the transaction, the person to whom any such payment is made, any beneficial interest in the issuer of the private placement broker, of a member of the immediate family of the private placement brokers, of an associated person of the private placement broker, or of a member of the immediate family of such associated person. Lastly, this section provides a finder safe harbor

whereby the finder is exempt from the registration requirements of this Act and whereby the finder is not required to become a member of any national securities association. Lastly, this section also amends the Exchange Act to clarify the validity of contracts with registered private placement brokers and finders and to remove private placement brokers from the definition of broker.

Section 2103. Limitations on State law

This section amends the Exchange Act so that no state or political subdivision may enforce any law, rule, regulation, or other administrative action that imposes greater registration, audit, financial recordkeeping, or reporting requirements on a private placement broker or finder than those that are required under this Act.

Title II. Small Business Investor Capital Access

Section 2201. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Small Business Investor Capital Access Act".

Section 2202. Inflation adjustment for the exemption threshold for certain Investment Advisers of private funds

This section amends the Investment Advisers Act to increase the exemption from registration threshold for advisers to small private funds to reflect changes in inflation.

Title III. Improving Capital Allocation for Newcomers

Section 2301. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Improving Capital Allocation for Newcomers Act of 2023".

Section 2302. Qualifying venture capital funds

This section amends the Investment Company Act by increasing the cap on aggregate capital contributions and uncalled capital commitments from $10 million to $150 million and increasing the allowable number of beneficial owners in a qualifying venture capital fund from 250 to 600.

Title IV. Small Entrepreneurs' Empowerment and Development

Section 2401. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Small Entrepreneurs" Empowerment and Development Act of 2023" or "SEED Act of 2023".

Section 2402. Micro-Offering Exemption

This section amends Section 4 of the Securities Act to allow small issuers to conduct a micro-offering free of mandated disclosures or filings where the aggregate amount of all securities sold by the issuer, including any amount sold in reliance on the exemption, during the 12-month period preceding such transactions does not exceed $250,000. This section also requires the SEC not later than 270 days after enactment of this Act to establish bad actor disqualification provisions similar to the provisions of Rule 506(d) of the Securities Act under which an issuer shall not be eligible to offer securities under Section 4 of the Securities Act.

Title V. Regulation A+ Improvement

Section 2501. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Regulation A+ Improvement Act of 2023".

Section 2502. JOBS Act-related exemption

This section amends Section 3(b) of the Securities Act to increase the amount that companies can raise under Regulation A from $50 million to $150 million. This section also requires the SEC to adjust this amount for inflation every two years to the nearest $10,000.

Title VI. Developing and Empowering Our Aspiring Leaders

Section 2601. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Developing and Empowering our Aspiring Leaders Act of 2023" or the "DEAL Act of 2023".

Section 2602. Definitions

This section requires the SEC, to the extent such revisions facilitate capital formation without compromising investor protection, to revise the definition of a qualifying investment to include an equity security issued by a qualifying portfolio company and to specify that an investment in another venture capital fund is a qualifying investment under such definition and to require, as a condition of a private fund qualifying as a venture capital fund, that the qualifying investments of the private fund are either predominantly qualifying investments that were acquired directly from a qualifying portfolio company or predominantly qualifying investments in another venture capital fund or other venture capital funds.

Section 2603. Reports

This section requires the Comptroller General of the United States to issue a report to Congress on the risks and impacts of concentrated sectoral counterparty risk in the banking sector, in light of the failure of Silicon Valley Bank. This section also requires the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation to issue a report to Congress and the SEC examining the access to banking services for venture funds and companies funded by venture capital, especially those funds and companies located outside of the established capital hubs of California, Massachusetts, and New York.

Title VII. Improving Crowdfunding Opportunities

Section 2701. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Improving Crowdfunding Opportunities Act".

Section 2702. Crowdfunding revisions

This section preempts state regulation of secondary transactions involving crowdfunding vehicles and clarifies legal liability for crowdfunding portals. It also increases the allowable aggregate amount companies can raise in any 12-month period from $5 million to $10 million and allows all non-accredited investors to invest up to 10 percent of the greater of their annual income or net worth.

Finally, this section also allows investment companies to participate in crowdfunding offerings, and it increases the offering size threshold under which an issuer may meet its financial statement requirements.

Title VIII. Restoring the Secondary Trading Market

Section 2801. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Restoring the Secondary Trading Market Act".

Section 2802. Exemption from State regulation

This section amends the Securities Act of 1933 to preempt State blue sky laws for off-exchange secondary trading in companies that make available current public information, including information required by Regulation A.

DIVISION C. INCREASING ACCESS TO PRIVATE MARKETS

Title I. Gig Worker Equity Compensation

Section 3101. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Gig Worker Equity Compensation Act".

Section 3102. Extension of Rule 701

This section expands Securities Act Rule 701 to allow gig workers to receive equity compensation for their services or goods. In carrying out this section, the SEC shall revise Rule 701 reflecting this section, and it may not revise Rule 701 in any manner that would restrict access to equity compensation for employees or individuals described in this section.

Section 3103. Preemption of certain provisions of State law

This section preempts state law to prevent gig workers from being presumed as employees due to their wage rates or offered benefits.

Section 3104. GAO study

This section requires the Comptroller of the United States to study the effects of this title and report its findings to Congress within three years of enactment.

Title II. Investment Opportunity Expansion

Section 3201. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Investment Opportunity Expansion Act".

Section 3202. Investment thresholds to qualify as an accredited investor

This section expands the "accredited investor" definition to include individuals who invest 10 percent or less of the greater of their net assets or annual income in a private offering.

Title III. Risk Disclosure and Investor Attestation

Section 3301. Short title

This section cites this title as the "Risk Disclosure and Investor Attestation Act".

Section 3302. Investor attestation

This section amends the Securities Act of 1933 to permit an individual to invest in private issuers upon acknowledging the investment risks. Under this section, such an individual would acknowledge their understanding of these risks using a specific form that the SEC shall establish. This form may not be longer than two pages in length. Within one year of enactment, the SEC shall issue rules to carry out amendments made by this section, including establishing the form required under such amendments.

Title IV. Accredited Investors Include Individuals Receiving Advice From Certain Professionals

Section 3401. Accredited investors include individuals receiving advice from certain professionals

This section amends the Securities Act of 1933 to expand the "accredited investor" definition to include individuals receiving individualized investment advice or individualized investment recommendations with respect to a private offering from a professional who qualifies as an accredited investor. This section specifies that "investment advice," as used in this section, shall be consistent with the interpretation of the phrase "engages in the business of advising others, either directly or through publications or writings, as to the value of securities or as to the advisability of investing in, purchasing, or selling securities'" under section 202(a)(11) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. Additionally, this section requires the SEC to revise the applicable regulations that define "accredited investor" in the same manner as such definition is revised under this section.

COMMITTEE CORRESPONDENCE

COMMITTEE ON
EDUCATION AND THE WORKFORCE
U.S. HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES
2176 RAYBURN HOUSE OFFICE BUILDING
WASHINGTON, DC 20515-6100

April 26, 2023

The Honorable Patrick McHenry
Chairman, Financial Services Committee
U.S. House of Representatives
2129 Rayburn House Office Building
Washington, D.C. 20515

Dear Chairman McHenry:

This letter is in regard to the jurisdictional interest of the Committee on Education and the Workforce in matters being considered in H.R. 2799, the Expanding Access to Capital Act of 2023.

In recognition of the desire to expedite consideration of H.R. 2799, the Committee on Education and the Workforce agrees to waive formal consideration of the bill as to provisions that fall within the rule X jurisdiction of the Committee on Education and the Workforce. The Committee takes this action with the mutual understanding that we do not waive any jurisdiction over the subject matter contained in this or similar legislation, and that the Committee will be appropriately consulted and involved as this bill or similar legislation moves forward so that we may address any remaining issues within our jurisdiction.

Our Committee also reserves the right to seek appointment of an appropriate number of conferees to any House-Senate conference involving this or similar legislation, and requests your support for any such request.

Finally, I respectfully request a response to this letter confirming this understanding with respect to H.R. 2799, as amended, and ask that a copy of our exchange of letters on this matter be included in your committee's report to accompany the legislation and/or in the Congressional Record during floor consideration thereof.

Sincerely,

Virginia Foxx

Virginia Foxx
Chairwoman

PATRICK McHENRY, NC
CHAIRMAN

MAXINE WATERS, CA
RANKING MEMBER

United States House of Representatives
One Hundred Eighteenth Congress
Committee on Financial Services
2129 Rayburn House Office Building
Washington, DC 20515

April 27, 2023

The Honorable Virginia Foxx
Chairwoman
Committee on Education and the Workforce
U.S. House of Representatives
2176 Rayburn House Office Building
Washington, D.C. 20515

Dear Chairwoman Foxx:

Thank you for agreeing to be discharged from further consideration of H.R. 2799, the *Expanding Access to Capital Act of 2023,* so that it may proceed expeditiously to the House Floor. I agree that by foregoing consideration of H.R. 2799 at this time, you do not waive any jurisdiction over the subject matter contained in this or similar legislation, and that you will be appropriately consulted and involved on this or similar legislation as it moves forward.

As discussed, I will seek to place a copy of our exchange of letters on this bill in the *Congressional Record* during floor consideration thereof.

Sincerely,

Patrick McHenry
Chairman
Committee on Financial Services

cc: The Honorable Kevin McCarthy, Speaker
The Honorable Maxine Waters, Ranking Member, Committee on Financial Services
The Honorable Robert C. "Bobby" Scott, Ranking Member, Committee on Education and the Workforce
The Honorable Jason Smith, Parliamentarian

CHANGES IN EXISTING LAW MADE BY THE BILL, AS REPORTED

In compliance with clause 3(e) of rule XIII of the Rules of the House of Representatives, changes in existing law made by the bill, as reported, are shown as follows (existing law proposed to be omitted is enclosed in black brackets, new matter is printed in italics, and existing law in which no change is proposed is shown in roman):

SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

TITLE I—

SHORT TITLE

SECTION 1. This title may be cited as the "Securities Act of 1933".

DEFINITIONS

SEC. 2. (a) DEFINITIONS.—When used in this title, unless the context otherwise requires—

(1) The term "security" means any note, stock, treasury stock, security future, security-based swap, bond, debenture, evidence of indebtedness, certificate of interest or participation in any profit-sharing agreement, collateral-trust certificate, preorganization certificate or subscription, transferable share, investment contract, voting-trust certificate, certificate of deposit for a security, fractional undivided interest in oil, gas, or other mineral rights, any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency, or, in general, any interest or instrument commonly known as a "security", or any certificate of interest or participation in, temporary or interim certificate for, receipt for, guarantee of, or warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase, any of the foregoing.

(2) The term "person" means an individual, a corporation, a partnership, an association, a joint-stock company, a trust, any unincorporated organization, or a government or political subdivision thereof. As used in this paragraph the term "trust" shall include only a trust where the interest or interests of the beneficiary or beneficiaries are evidenced by a security.

(3) The term "sale" or "sell" shall include every contract of sale or disposition of a security or interest in a security, for value. The term "offer to sell", "offer for sale", or "offer" shall include every attempt or offer to dispose of, or solicitation of an offer to buy, a security or interest in a security, for value. The terms defined in this paragraph and the term "offer to buy" as used in subsection (c) of section 5 shall not include preliminary negotiations or agreements between an issuer (or any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by an issuer, or under direct or indirect common control with an issuer) and any underwriter or among underwriters who are or are to be in privity of contract with an issuer (or any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by an issuer, or

under direct or indirect common control with an issuer). Any security given or delivered with, or as a bonus on account of, any purchase of securities or any other thing, shall be conclusively presumed to constitute a part of the subject of such purchase and to have been offered and sold for value. The issue or transfer of a right or privilege, when originally issued or transferred with a security, giving the holder of such security the right to convert such security into another security of the same issuer or of another person, or giving a right to subscribe to another security of the same issuer or of another person, which right cannot be exercised until some future date, shall not be deemed to be an offer or sale of such other security; but the issue or transfer of such other security upon the exercise of such right of conversion or subscription shall be deemed a sale of such other security. Any offer or sale of a security futures product by or on behalf of the issuer of the securities underlying the security futures product, an affiliate of the issuer, or an underwriter, shall constitute a contract for sale of, sale of, offer for sale, or offer to sell the underlying securities. Any offer or sale of a security-based swap by or on behalf of the issuer of the securities upon which such security-based swap is based or is referenced, an affiliate of the issuer, or an underwriter, shall constitute a contract for sale of, sale of, offer for sale, or offer to sell such securities. The publication or distribution by a broker or dealer of a research report about [an emerging growth company] *an issuer* that is the subject of a proposed public offering of [the common equity] *any* securities of [such emerging growth company] *such issuer* pursuant to a registration statement that the issuer proposes to file, or has filed, or that is effective shall be deemed for purposes of paragraph (10) of this subsection and section 5(c) not to constitute an offer for sale or offer to sell a security, even if the broker or dealer is participating or will participate in the registered offering of the securities of the issuer. As used in this paragraph, the term "research report" means a written, electronic, or oral communication that includes information, opinions, or recommendations with respect to securities of an issuer or an analysis of a security or an issuer, whether or not it provides information reasonably sufficient upon which to base an investment decision.

(4) The term "issuer" means every person who issues or proposes to issue any security; except that with respect to certificates of deposit, voting-trust certificates, or collateral-trust certificates, or with respect to certificates of interest or shares in an unincorporated investment trust not having a board of directors (or persons performing similar functions) or of the fixed, restricted management, or unit type, the term "issuer" means the person or persons performing the acts and assuming the duties of depositor or manager pursuant to the provisions of the trust or other agreement or instrument under which such securities are issued; except that in the case of an unincorporated association which provides by its articles for limited liability of any or all of its members, or in the case of a trust, committee, or other legal entity, the trustees or members thereof shall not be individually liable as issuers of any secu-

rity issued by the association, trust, committee, or other legal entity; except that with respect to equipment-trust certificates or like securities, the term "issuer" means the person by whom the equipment or property is or is to be used; and except that with respect to fractional undivided interests in oil, gas, or other mineral rights, the term "issuer" means the owner of any such right or of any interest in such right (whether whole or fractional) who creates fractional interests therein for the purpose of public offering.

(5) The term "Commission" means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(6) The term "Territory" means Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, and the insular possessions of the United States.

(7) The term "interstate commerce" means trade or commerce in securities or any transportation or communication relating thereto among the several States or between the District of Columbia or any Territory of the United States and any State or other Territory, or between any foreign country and any State, Territory, or the District of Columbia, or within the District of Columbia.

(8) The term "registration statement" means the statement provided for in section 6, and includes any amendment thereto and any report, document, or memorandum filed as part of such statement or incorporated therein by reference.

(9) The term "write" or "written" shall include printed, lithographed, or any means of graphic communication.

(10) The term "prospectus" means any prospectus, notice, circular, advertisement, letter, or communication, written or by radio or television, which offers any security for sale or confirms the sale of any security; except that (a) a communication sent or given after the effective date of the registration statement (other than a prospectus permitted under subsection (b) of section 10) shall not be deemed a prospectus if it is proved that prior to or at the same time with such communication a written prospectus meeting the requirements of subsection (a) of section 10 at the time of such communication was sent or given to the person to whom the communication was made, and (b) a notice, circular, advertisement, letter, or communication in respect of a security shall not be deemed to be a prospectus if it states from whom a written prospectus meeting the requirements of section 10 may be obtained and, in addition, does no more than identify the security, state the price thereof, state by whom orders will be executed, and contain such other information as the Commission, by rules or regulations deemed necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, and subject to such terms and conditions as may be prescribed therein, may permit.

(11) The term "underwriter" means any person who has purchased from an issuer with a view to, or offers or sells for an issuer in connection with, the distribution of any security, or participates or has a direct or indirect participation in any such undertaking, or participates or has a participation in the direct or indirect underwriting of any such undertaking; but such term shall not include a person whose interest is limited to a commission from an underwriter or dealer not in excess

of the usual and customary distributors' or sellers' commission. As used in this paragraph the term "issuer" shall include, in addition to an issuer, any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by the issuer, or any person under direct or indirect common control with the issuer.

(12) The term "dealer" means any person who engages either for all or part of his time, directly or indirectly, as agent, broker, or principal, in the business of offering, buying, selling, or otherwise dealing or trading in securities issued by another person.

(13) The term "insurance company" means a company which is organized as an insurance company, whose primary and predominant business activity is the writing of insurance or the reinsuring of risks underwritten by insurance companies, and which is subject to supervision by the insurance commissioner, or a similar official or agency, of a State or territory or the District of Columbia; or any receiver or similar official or any liquidating agent for such company, in his capacity as such.

(14) The term "separate account" means an account established and maintained by an insurance company pursuant to the laws of any State or territory of the United States, the District of Columbia, or of Canada or any province thereof, under which income, gains and losses, whether or not realized, from assets allocated to such account, are, in accordance with the applicable contract, credited to or charged against such account without regard to other income, gains, or losses of the insurance company.

[(15) The term "accredited investor" shall mean—**]**

(15) ACCREDITED INVESTOR.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "accredited investor" means—

(i) a bank as defined in section 3(a)(2) whether acting in its individual or fiduciary capacity; an insurance company as defined in paragraph (13) of this subsection; an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 or a business development company as defined in section 2(a)(48) of that Act; a Small Business Investment Company licensed by the Small Business Administration; or an employee benefit plan, including an individual retirement account, which is subject to the provisions of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, if the investment decision is made by a plan fiduciary, as defined in section 3(21) of such Act, which is either a bank, insurance company, or registered investment adviser; **[**or**]**

(ii) any person who, on the basis of such factors as financial sophistication, net worth, knowledge, and experience in financial matters, or amount of assets under management qualifies as an accredited investor under rules and regulations which the Commission shall prescribe**[**.**]***;*

(iii) with respect to a proposed transaction, any individual whose aggregate investment, at the completion of such transaction, in securities with respect to which there has not been a public offering is not more than 10 percent of the greater of—

(I) the net assets of the individual; or

(II) the annual income of the individual;

(iv) with respect to an issuer, any individual that has attested to the issuer that the individual understands the risks of investment in private issuers, using such form as the Commission shall establish, by rule, but which form may not be longer than 2 pages in length; or

(v) any individual receiving individualized investment advice or individualized investment recommendations with respect to the applicable transaction from an individual described under section 203.501(a)(10) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.

(B) DEFINITIONS.—In subparagraph (A)(v):

(i) INVESTMENT ADVICE.—The term "investment advice" shall be interpreted consistently with the interpretation of the phrase "engages in the business of advising others, either directly or through publications or writings, as to the value of securities or as to the advisability of investing in, purchasing, or selling securities" under section 202(a)(11) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b–2(a)(11)).

(ii) INVESTMENT RECOMMENDATION.—The term "investment recommendation" shall be interpreted consistently with the interpretation of the term "recommendation" under section 240.15l-1 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.

(16) The terms "security future", "narrow-based security index", and "security futures product" have the same meanings as provided in section 3(a)(55) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

(17) The terms "swap" and "security-based swap" have the same meanings as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(18) The terms "purchase" or "sale" of a security-based swap shall be deemed to mean the execution, termination (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing of rights or obligations under, a security-based swap, as the context may require.

(19) The term "emerging growth company" means an issuer that had total annual gross revenues of less than ⟦$1,000,000,000⟧ *$1,500,000,000* (as such amount is indexed for inflation every 5 years by the Commission to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, setting the threshold to the nearest 1,000,000) during its most recently completed fiscal year. An issuer that is an emerging growth company as of the first day of that fiscal year shall continue to be deemed an emerging growth company until the earliest of—

(A) the last day of the fiscal year of the issuer during which it had total annual gross revenues of ⟦$1,000,000,000⟧ *$1,500,000,000* (as such amount is indexed for inflation every 5 years by the Commission to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Sta-

tistics, setting the threshold to the nearest 1,000,000) or more;

(B) the last day of the fiscal year of the issuer following the [fifth] *7-year* anniversary of the date of the first sale of common equity securities of the issuer pursuant to an effective registration statement under this title; *or*

(C) the date on which such issuer has, during the previous 3-year period, issued more than [$1,000,000,000] *$1,500,000,000* in non-convertible debt[; or].

[(D) the date on which such issuer is deemed to be a "large accelerated filer", as defined in section 240.12b–2 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, or any successor thereto.]

(b) CONSIDERATION OF PROMOTION OF EFFICIENCY, COMPETITION, AND CAPITAL FORMATION.—Whenever pursuant to this title the Commission is engaged in rulemaking and is required to consider or determine whether an action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, the Commission shall also consider, in addition to the protection of investors, whether the action will promote efficiency, competition, and capital formation.

* * * * * * *

EXEMPTED SECURITIES

SEC. 3. (a) Except as hereinafter expressly provided, the provisions of this title shall not apply to any of the following classes of securities:

(1) Reserved.

(2) Any security issued or guaranteed by the United States or any Territory thereof, or by the District of Columbia, or by any State of the United States, or by any political subdivision of a State or Territory, or by any public instrumentality of one or more States or Territories, or by any person controlled or supervised by and acting as an instrumentality of the Government of the United States pursuant to authority granted by the Congress of the United States; or any certificate of deposit for any of the foregoing; or any security issued or guaranteed by any bank; or any security issued by or representing an interest in or a direct obligation of a Federal Reserve bank; or any interest or participation in any common trust fund or similar fund that is excluded from the definition of the term "investment company" under section 3(c)(3) of the Investment Company Act of 1940; or any security which is an industrial development bond (as defined in section 103(c)(2) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954) the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1) of such Code if, by reason of the application of paragraph (4) or (6) of section 103(c) of such Code (determined as if paragraphs (4)(A), (5), and (7) were not included in such section 103(c)), paragraph (1) of such section 103(c) does not apply to such security; or any interest or participation in a single trust fund, or in a collective trust fund maintained by a bank, or any security arising out of a contract issued by an insurance company, which interest, participation, or security is issued in connection with (A) a stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plan which meets the

requirements for qualification under section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, (B) an annuity plan which meets the requirements for the deduction of the employer's contributions under section 404(a)(2) of such Code, (C) a governmental plan as defined in section 414(d) of such Code which has been established by an employer for the exclusive benefit of its employees or their beneficiaries for the purpose of distributing to such employees or their beneficiaries the corpus and income of the funds accumulated under such plan, if under such plan it is impossible, prior to the satisfaction of all liabilities with respect to such employees and their beneficiaries, for any part of the corpus or income to be used for, or diverted to, purposes other than the exclusive benefit of such employees or their beneficiaries, or (D) a church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, other than any plan described in subparagraph (A), (B), (C), or (D) of this paragraph (i) the contributions under which are held in a single trust fund or in a separate account maintained by an insurance company for a single employer and under which an amount in excess of the employer's contribution is allocated to the purchase of securities (other than interests or participations in the trust or separate account itself) issued by the employer or any company directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the employer, (ii) which covers employees some or all of whom are employees within the meaning of section 401(c)(1) of such Code (other than a person participating in a church plan who is described in section 414(e)(3)(B) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986), or (iii) which is a plan funded by an annuity contract described in section 403(b) of such Code (other than a retirement income account described in section 403(b)(9) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, to the extent that the interest or participation in such single trust fund or collective trust fund is issued to a church, a convention or association of churches, or an organization described in section 414(e)(3)(A) of such Code establishing or maintaining the retirement income account or to a trust established by any such entity in connection with the retirement income account). The Commission, by rules and regulations or order, shall exempt from the provisions of section 5 of this title any interest or participation issued in connection with a stock bonus, pension, profit-sharing, or annuity plan which covers employees some or all of whom are employees within the meaning of section 401(c)(1) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, if and to the extent that the Commission determines this to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes fairly intended by the policy and provisions of this title. For purposes of this paragraph, a security issued or guaranteed by a bank shall not include any interest or participation in any collective trust fund maintained by a bank; and the term "bank" means any national bank, or any banking institution organized under the laws of any State, territory, or the District of Columbia, the business of which is substantially confined to banking and is supervised by the State or terri-

torial banking commission or similar official; except that in the case of a common trust fund or similar fund, or a collective trust fund, the term "bank" has the same meaning as in the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(3) Any note, draft, bill of exchange, or banker's acceptance which arises out of a current transaction or the proceeds of which have been or are to be used for current transactions, and which has a maturity at the time of issuance of not exceeding nine months, exclusive of days of grace, or any renewal thereof the maturity of which is likewise limited;

(4) Any security issued by a person organized and operated exclusively for religious, educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, or reformatory purposes and not for pecuniary profit, and no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any person, private stockholder, or individual, or any security of a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(5) Any security issued (A) by a savings and loan association, building and loan association, cooperative bank, homestead association, or similar institution, which is supervised and examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over any such institution; or (B) by (i) a farmer's cooperative organization exempt from tax under section 521 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, (ii) a corporation described in section 501(c)(16) of such Code and exempt from tax under section 501(a) of such Code, or (iii) a corporation described in section 501(c)(2) of such Code which is exempt from tax under section 501(a) of such Code and is organized for the exclusive purpose of holding title to property, collecting income therefrom, and turning over the entire amount thereof, less expenses, to an organization or corporation described in clause (i) or (ii);

(6) Any interest in a railroad equipment trust. For purposes of this paragraph "interest in a railroad equipment trust" means any interest in an equipment trust, lease, conditional sales contract, or other similar arrangement entered into, issued, assumed, guaranteed by, or for the benefit of, a common carrier to finance the acquisition of rolling stock, including motive power;

(7) Certificates issued by a receiver or by a trustee in bankruptcy, with the approval of the court;

(8) Any insurance or endowment policy or annuity contract or optional annuity contract, issued by a corporation subject to the supervision of the insurance commissioner, bank commissioner, or any agency or officer performing like functions, of any State or Territory of the United States or the District of Columbia;

(9) Except with respect to a security exchanged in a case under title 11, any security exchanged by the issuer with its existing security holders exclusively where no commission or other remuneration is paid or given directly or indirectly for soliciting such exchange;

(10) Except with respect to a security exchanged in a case under title 11, any security which is issued in exchange for one or more bona fide outstanding securities, claims or property in-

terests, or partly in such exchange and partly for cash, where the terms and conditions of such issuance and exchange are approved, after a hearing upon the fairness of such terms and conditions at which all persons to whom it is proposed to issue securities in such exchange shall have the right to appear, by any court, or by any official or agency of the United States, or by any State or Territorial banking or insurance commission or other governmental authority expressly authorized by law to grant such approval;

(11) Any security which is a part of an issue offered and sold only to persons resident within a single State or Territory, where the issuer of such security is a person resident and doing business within or, if a corporation, incorporated by and doing business within, such State or Territory.

(12) Any equity security issued in connection with the acquisition by a holding company of a bank under section 3(a) of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 or a savings association under section 10(e) of the Home Owners' Loan Act, if—

(A) the acquisition occurs solely as part of a reorganization in which security holders exchange their shares of a bank or savings association for shares of a newly formed holding company with no significant assets other than securities of the bank or savings association and the existing subsidiaries of the bank or savings association;

(B) the security holders receive, after that reorganization, substantially the same proportional share interests in the holding company as they held in the bank or savings association, except for nominal changes in shareholders' interests resulting from lawful elimination of fractional interests and the exercise of dissenting shareholders' rights under State or Federal law;

(C) the rights and interests of security holders in the holding company are substantially the same as those in the bank or savings association prior to the transaction, other than as may be required by law; and

(D) the holding company has substantially the same assets and liabilities, on a consolidated basis, as the bank or savings association had prior to the transaction.

For purposes of this paragraph, the term "savings association" means a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act) the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

(13) Any security issued by or any interest or participation in any church plan, company or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(14) Any security futures product that is—

(A) cleared by a clearing agency registered under section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or exempt from registration under subsection (b)(7) of such section 17A; and

(B) traded on a national securities exchange or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 15A(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

(b) ADDITIONAL EXEMPTIONS.—

(1) SMALL ISSUES EXEMPTIVE AUTHORITY.—The Commission may from time to time by its rules and regulations, and subject to such terms and conditions as may be prescribed therein, add any class of securities to the securities exempted as provided in this section, if it finds that the enforcement of this title with respect to such securities is not necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors by reason of the small amount involved or the limited character of the public offering; but no issue of securities shall be exempted under this subsection where the aggregate amount at which such issue is offered to the public exceeds $5,000,000.

(2) ADDITIONAL ISSUES.—The Commission shall by rule or regulation add a class of securities to the securities exempted pursuant to this section in accordance with the following terms and conditions:

(A) The aggregate offering amount of all securities offered and sold within the prior 12-month period in reliance on the exemption added in accordance with this paragraph shall not exceed [$50,000,000] *$150,000,000, adjusted for inflation by the Commission every 2 years to the nearest $10,000 to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics*.

(B) The securities may be offered and sold publicly.

(C) The securities shall not be restricted securities within the meaning of the Federal securities laws and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

(D) The civil liability provision in section 12(a)(2) shall apply to any person offering or selling such securities.

(E) The issuer may solicit interest in the offering prior to filing any offering statement, on such terms and conditions as the Commission may prescribe in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(F) The Commission shall require the issuer to file audited financial statements with the Commission annually.

(G) Such other terms, conditions, or requirements as the Commission may determine necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors, which may include—

(i) a requirement that the issuer prepare and electronically file with the Commission and distribute to prospective investors an offering statement, and any related documents, in such form and with such content as prescribed by the Commission, including audited financial statements, a description of the issuer's business operations, its financial condition, its corporate governance principles, its use of investor funds, and other appropriate matters; and

(ii) disqualification provisions under which the exemption shall not be available to the issuer or its predecessors, affiliates, officers, directors, underwriters, or other related persons, which shall be substantially similar to the disqualification provisions contained in the regulations adopted in accordance with section 926 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Re-

form and Consumer Protection Act (15 U.S.C. 77d note).

(3) LIMITATION.—Only the following types of securities may be exempted under a rule or regulation adopted pursuant to paragraph (2): equity securities, debt securities, and debt securities convertible or exchangeable to equity interests, including any guarantees of such securities.

(4) PERIODIC DISCLOSURES.—Upon such terms and conditions as the Commission determines necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors, the Commission by rule or regulation may require an issuer of a class of securities exempted under paragraph (2) to make available to investors and file with the Commission periodic disclosures regarding the issuer, its business operations, its financial condition, its corporate governance principles, its use of investor funds, and other appropriate matters, and also may provide for the suspension and termination of such a requirement with respect to that issuer.

(5) ADJUSTMENT.—Not later than 2 years after the date of enactment of the Small Company Capital Formation Act of 2011 and every 2 years thereafter, the Commission shall review the offering amount limitation described in paragraph (2)(A) and shall increase [such amount as] *such amount, in addition to the adjustment for inflation provided for under such paragraph (2)(A), as* the Commission determines appropriate. If the Commission determines not to increase [such amount, it] *such amount, in addition to the adjustment for inflation provided for under such paragraph (2)(A), it* shall report to the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate on its reasons for not increasing the amount.

(c) The Commission may from time to time by its rules and regulations and subject to such terms and conditions as may be prescribed therein, add to the securities exempted as provided in this section any class of securities issued by a small business investment company under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958 if it finds, having regard to the purposes of that Act, that the enforcement of this Act with respect to such securities is not necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors.

EXEMPTED TRANSACTIONS

SEC. 4. (a) The provisions of section 5 shall not apply to—

(1) transactions by any person other than an issuer, underwriter, or dealer.

(2) transactions by an issuer not involving any public offering.

(3) transactions by a dealer (including an underwriter no longer acting as an underwriter in respect of the security involved in such transaction), except—

(A) transactions taking place prior to the expiration of forty days after the first date upon which the security was bona fide offered to the public by the issuer or by or through an underwriter,

(B) transactions in a security as to which a registration statement has been filed taking place prior to the expiration of forty days after the effective date of such registration statement or prior to the expiration of forty days after the first date upon which the security was bona fide offered to the public by the issuer or by or through an underwriter after such effective date, whichever is later (excluding in the computation of such forty days any time during which a stop order issued under section 8 is in effect as to the security), or such shorter period as the Commission may specify by rules and regulations or order, and

(C) transactions as to securities constituting the whole or a part of an unsold allotment to or subscription by such dealer as a participant in the distribution of such securities by the issuer or by or through an underwriter.

With respect to transactions referred to in clause (B), if securities of the issuer have not previously been sold pursuant to an earlier effective registration statement the applicable period, instead of forty days, shall be ninety days, or such shorter period as the Commission may specify by rules and regulations or order.

(4) brokers' transactions executed upon customers' orders on any exchange or in the over-the-counter market but not the solicitation of such orders.

(5) transactions involving offers or sales by an issuer solely to one or more accredited investors, if the aggregate offering price of an issue of securities offered in reliance on this paragraph does not exceed the amount allowed under section 3(b)(1) of this title, if there is no advertising or public solicitation in connection with the transaction by the issuer or anyone acting on the issuer's behalf, and if the issuer files such notice with the Commission as the Commission shall prescribe.

(6) transactions involving the offer or sale of securities by an issuer (including all entities controlled by or under common control with the issuer), provided that—

(A) the aggregate amount sold to all investors by the issuer, including any amount sold in reliance on the exemption provided under this paragraph during the 12-month period preceding the date of such transaction, is not more than [$1,000,000] *$10,000,000*;

(B) the aggregate amount sold to any investor by an issuer, including any amount sold in reliance on the exemption provided under this paragraph during the 12-month period preceding the date of such transaction, *does not exceed 10 percent of the annual income or net worth of such investor* [does not exceed—]

[(i) the greater of $2,000 or 5 percent of the annual income or net worth of such investor, as applicable, if either the annual income or the net worth of the investor is less than $100,000; and

[(ii) 10 percent of the annual income or net worth of such investor, as applicable, not to exceed a maximum aggregate amount sold of $100,000, if either the annual income or net worth of the investor is equal to or more than $100,000;]

(C) the transaction is conducted through a broker or funding portal that complies with the requirements of section 4A(a); and

(D) the issuer complies with the requirements of section 4A(b).

(7) transactions meeting the requirements of subsection (d).

(8) transactions meeting the requirements of subsection (f).

(b) Offers and sales exempt under section 230.506 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations (as revised pursuant to section 201 of the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act) shall not be deemed public offerings under the Federal securities laws as a result of general advertising or general solicitation.

(c)(1) With respect to securities offered and sold in compliance with Rule 506 of Regulation D under this Act, no person who meets the conditions set forth in paragraph (2) shall be subject to registration as a broker or dealer pursuant to section 15(a)(1) of this title, solely because—

(A) that person maintains a platform or mechanism that permits the offer, sale, purchase, or negotiation of or with respect to securities, or permits general solicitations, general advertisements, or similar or related activities by issuers of such securities, whether online, in person, or through any other means;

(B) that person or any person associated with that person co-invests in such securities; or

(C) that person or any person associated with that person provides ancillary services with respect to such securities.

(2) The exemption provided in paragraph (1) shall apply to any person described in such paragraph if—

(A) such person and each person associated with that person receives no compensation in connection with the purchase or sale of such security;

(B) such person and each person associated with that person does not have possession of customer funds or securities in connection with the purchase or sale of such security; and

(C) such person is not subject to a statutory disqualification as defined in section 3(a)(39) of this title and does not have any person associated with that person subject to such a statutory disqualification.

(3) For the purposes of this subsection, the term "ancillary services" means—

(A) the provision of due diligence services, in connection with the offer, sale, purchase, or negotiation of such security, so long as such services do not include, for separate compensation, investment advice or recommendations to issuers or investors; and

(B) the provision of standardized documents to the issuers and investors, so long as such person or entity does not negotiate the terms of the issuance for and on behalf of third parties and issuers are not required to use the standardized documents as a condition of using the service.

(d) CERTAIN ACCREDITED INVESTOR TRANSACTIONS.—The transactions referred to in subsection (a)(7) are transactions meeting the following requirements:

(1) ACCREDITED INVESTOR REQUIREMENT.—Each purchaser is an accredited investor, as that term is defined in section 230.501(a) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations (or any successor regulation).

(2) PROHIBITION ON GENERAL SOLICITATION OR ADVERTISING.—Neither the seller, nor any person acting on the seller's behalf, offers or sells securities by any form of general solicitation or general advertising.

(3) INFORMATION REQUIREMENT.—In the case of a transaction involving the securities of an issuer that is neither subject to section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m; 78o(d)), nor exempt from reporting pursuant to section 240.12g3–2(b) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, nor a foreign government (as defined in section 230.405 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations) eligible to register securities under Schedule B, the seller and a prospective purchaser designated by the seller obtain from the issuer, upon request of the seller, and the seller in all cases makes available to a prospective purchaser, the following information (which shall be reasonably current in relation to the date of resale under this section):

(A) The exact name of the issuer and the issuer's predecessor (if any).

(B) The address of the issuer's principal executive offices.

(C) The exact title and class of the security.

(D) The par or stated value of the security.

(E) The number of shares or total amount of the securities outstanding as of the end of the issuer's most recent fiscal year.

(F) The name and address of the transfer agent, corporate secretary, or other person responsible for transferring shares and stock certificates.

(G) A statement of the nature of the business of the issuer and the products and services it offers, which shall be presumed reasonably current if the statement is as of 12 months before the transaction date.

(H) The names of the officers and directors of the issuer.

(I) The names of any persons registered as a broker, dealer, or agent that shall be paid or given, directly or indirectly, any commission or remuneration for such person's participation in the offer or sale of the securities.

(J) The issuer's most recent balance sheet and profit and loss statement and similar financial statements, which shall—

(i) be for such part of the 2 preceding fiscal years as the issuer has been in operation;

(ii) be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles or, in the case of a foreign private issuer, be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles or the International Financial Reporting Standards issued by the International Accounting Standards Board;

(iii) be presumed reasonably current if—

(I) with respect to the balance sheet, the balance sheet is as of a date less than 16 months before the transaction date; and

(II) with respect to the profit and loss statement, such statement is for the 12 months preceding the date of the issuer's balance sheet; and

(iv) if the balance sheet is not as of a date less than 6 months before the transaction date, be accompanied by additional statements of profit and loss for the period from the date of such balance sheet to a date less than 6 months before the transaction date.

(K) To the extent that the seller is a control person with respect to the issuer, a brief statement regarding the nature of the affiliation, and a statement certified by such seller that they have no reasonable grounds to believe that the issuer is in violation of the securities laws or regulations.

(4) ISSUERS DISQUALIFIED.—The transaction is not for the sale of a security where the seller is an issuer or a subsidiary, either directly or indirectly, of the issuer.

(5) BAD ACTOR PROHIBITION.—Neither the seller, nor any person that has been or will be paid (directly or indirectly) remuneration or a commission for their participation in the offer or sale of the securities, including solicitation of purchasers for the seller is subject to an event that would disqualify an issuer or other covered person under Rule 506(d)(1) of Regulation D (17 CFR 230.506(d)(1)) or is subject to a statutory disqualification described under section 3(a)(39) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

(6) BUSINESS REQUIREMENT.—The issuer is engaged in business, is not in the organizational stage or in bankruptcy or receivership, and is not a blank check, blind pool, or shell company that has no specific business plan or purpose or has indicated that the issuer's primary business plan is to engage in a merger or combination of the business with, or an acquisition of, an unidentified person.

(7) UNDERWRITER PROHIBITION.—The transaction is not with respect to a security that constitutes the whole or part of an unsold allotment to, or a subscription or participation by, a broker or dealer as an underwriter of the security or a redistribution.

(8) OUTSTANDING CLASS REQUIREMENT.—The transaction is with respect to a security of a class that has been authorized and outstanding for at least 90 days prior to the date of the transaction.

(e) ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—With respect to an exempted transaction described under subsection (a)(7):

(A) Securities acquired in such transaction shall be deemed to have been acquired in a transaction not involving any public offering.

(B) Such transaction shall be deemed not to be a distribution for purposes of section 2(a)(11).

(C) Securities involved in such transaction shall be deemed to be restricted securities within the meaning of Rule 144 (17 CFR 230.144).

(2) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.—The exemption provided by subsection (a)(7) shall not be the exclusive means for establishing an exemption from the registration requirements of section 5.

(f) MICRO-OFFERINGS.—The transactions referred to in subsection (a)(8) are transactions involving the sale of securities by an issuer (including all entities controlled by or under common control with the issuer) where the aggregate amount of all securities sold by the issuer, including any amount sold in reliance on the exemption provided under subsection (a)(8), during the 12-month period preceding such transaction, does not exceed $250,000.

SEC. 4A. REQUIREMENTS WITH RESPECT TO CERTAIN SMALL TRANSACTIONS.

(a) REQUIREMENTS ON INTERMEDIARIES.—A person acting as an intermediary in a transaction involving the offer or sale of securities for the account of others pursuant to **[**section 4(6)**]** *section 4(a)(6)* shall—

(1) register with the Commission as—

(A) a broker; or

(B) a funding portal (as defined in section 3(a)(80) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934);

(2) register with any applicable self-regulatory organization (as defined in section 3(a)(26) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934);

(3) provide such disclosures, including disclosures related to risks and other investor education materials, as the Commission shall, by rule, determine appropriate;

(4) ensure that each investor—

(A) reviews investor-education information, in accordance with standards established by the Commission, by rule;

(B) positively affirms that the investor understands that the investor is risking the loss of the entire investment, and that the investor could bear such a loss; and

(C) answers questions demonstrating—

(i) an understanding of the level of risk generally applicable to investments in startups, emerging businesses, and small issuers;

(ii) an understanding of the risk of illiquidity; and

(iii) an understanding of such other matters as the Commission determines appropriate, by rule;

(5) take such measures to reduce the risk of fraud with respect to such transactions, as established by the Commission, by rule, including obtaining a background and securities enforcement regulatory history check on each officer, director, and person holding more than 20 percent of the outstanding equity of every issuer whose securities are offered by such person;

(6) not later than 21 days prior to the first day on which securities are sold to any investor (or such other period as the Commission may establish), make available to the Commission

and to potential investors any information provided by the issuer pursuant to subsection (b);

(7) ensure that all offering proceeds are only provided to the issuer when the aggregate capital raised from all investors is equal to or greater than a target offering amount, and allow all investors to cancel their commitments to invest, as the Commission shall, by rule, determine appropriate;

(8) make such efforts as the Commission determines appropriate, by rule, to ensure that no investor in a 12-month period has purchased securities offered pursuant to [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)* that, in the aggregate, from all issuers, exceed the investment limits set forth in [section 4(6)(B)] *section 4(a)(6)(B)*;

(9) take such steps to protect the privacy of information collected from investors as the Commission shall, by rule, determine appropriate;

(10) not compensate promoters, finders, or lead generators for providing the broker or funding portal with the personal identifying information of any potential investor;

(11) prohibit its directors, officers, or partners (or any person occupying a similar status or performing a similar function) from having any financial interest in an issuer using its services; [and]

(12) meet such other requirements as the Commission may, by rule, prescribe, for the protection of investors and in the public interest[.]*; and*

(13) not be subject to the recordkeeping and reporting requirements relating to monetary instruments under subchapter II of chapter 53 of title 31, United States Code.

(b) REQUIREMENTS FOR ISSUERS.—For purposes of [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)*, an issuer who offers or sells securities shall—

(1) file with the Commission and provide to investors and the relevant broker or funding portal, and make available to potential investors—

(A) the name, legal status, physical address, and website address of the issuer;

(B) the names of the directors and officers (and any persons occupying a similar status or performing a similar function), and each person holding more than 20 percent of the shares of the issuer;

(C) a description of the business of the issuer and the anticipated business plan of the issuer;

(D) a description of the financial condition of the issuer, including, for offerings that, together with all other offerings of the issuer under [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)* within the preceding 12-month period, have, in the aggregate, target offering amounts of—

(i) $100,000 or less—

(I) the income tax returns filed by the issuer for the most recently completed year (if any); and

(II) financial statements of the issuer, which shall be certified by the principal executive officer of the issuer to be true and complete in all material respects;

(ii) more than $100,000, but not more than $500,000, financial statements reviewed by a public accountant who is independent of the issuer, using professional standards and procedures for such review or standards and procedures established by the Commission, by rule, for such purpose; and

(iii) more than $500,000 (or such other amount as the Commission may establish, by rule), audited financial statements;

(E) a description of the stated purpose and intended use of the proceeds of the offering sought by the issuer with respect to the target offering amount;

(F) the target offering amount, the deadline to reach the target offering amount, and regular updates regarding the progress of the issuer in meeting the target offering amount;

(G) the price to the public of the securities or the method for determining the price, provided that, prior to sale, each investor shall be provided in writing the final price and all required disclosures, with a reasonable opportunity to rescind the commitment to purchase the securities;

(H) a description of the ownership and capital structure of the issuer, including—

(i) terms of the securities of the issuer being offered and each other class of security of the issuer, including how such terms may be modified, and a summary of the differences between such securities, including how the rights of the securities being offered may be materially limited, diluted, or qualified by the rights of any other class of security of the issuer;

(ii) a description of how the exercise of the rights held by the principal shareholders of the issuer could negatively impact the purchasers of the securities being offered;

(iii) the name and ownership level of each existing shareholder who owns more than 20 percent of any class of the securities of the issuer;

(iv) how the securities being offered are being valued, and examples of methods for how such securities may be valued by the issuer in the future, including during subsequent corporate actions; and

(v) the risks to purchasers of the securities relating to minority ownership in the issuer, the risks associated with corporate actions, including additional issuances of shares, a sale of the issuer or of assets of the issuer, or transactions with related parties; and

(I) such other information as the Commission may, by rule, prescribe, for the protection of investors and in the public interest;

(2) not advertise the terms of the offering, except for notices which direct investors to the funding portal or broker;

(3) not compensate or commit to compensate, directly or indirectly, any person to promote its offerings through communication channels provided by a broker or funding portal, without taking such steps as the Commission shall, by rule, require to

ensure that such person clearly discloses the receipt, past or prospective, of such compensation, upon each instance of such promotional communication;

(4) not less than annually, file with the Commission and provide to investors reports of the results of operations and financial statements of the issuer, as the Commission shall, by rule, determine appropriate, subject to such exceptions and termination dates as the Commission may establish, by rule; and

(5) comply with such other requirements as the Commission may, by rule, prescribe, for the protection of investors and in the public interest.

(c) LIABILITY FOR MATERIAL MISSTATEMENTS AND OMISSIONS.—

(1) ACTIONS AUTHORIZED.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2), a person who purchases a security in a transaction exempted by the provisions of **[**section 4(6)**]** *section 4(a)(6)* may bring an action against an issuer described in paragraph (2), either at law or in equity in any court of competent jurisdiction, to recover the consideration paid for such security with interest thereon, less the amount of any income received thereon, upon the tender of such security, or for damages if such person no longer owns the security.

(B) LIABILITY.—An action brought under this paragraph shall be subject to the provisions of section 12(b) and section 13, as if the liability were created under section 12(a)(2).

(2) APPLICABILITY.—An issuer shall be liable in an action under paragraph (1), if the issuer—

(A) by the use of any means or instruments of transportation or communication in interstate commerce or of the mails, by any means of any written or oral communication, in the offering or sale of a security in a transaction exempted by the provisions of **[**section 4(6)**]** *section 4(a)(6)*, makes an untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state a material fact required to be stated or necessary in order to make the statements, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, provided that the purchaser did not know of such untruth or omission; and

(B) does not sustain the burden of proof that such issuer did not know, and in the exercise of reasonable care could not have known, of such untruth or omission.

(3) LIABILITY OF FUNDING PORTALS.—For the purposes of this subsection, a funding portal, as that term is defined in section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)), shall not be considered to be an issuer unless, in connection with the offer or sale of a security, the funding portal knowingly—

(A) makes any untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state a material fact in order to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which they are made, not misleading; or

(B) engages in any act, practice, or course of business which operates or would operate as a fraud or deceit upon any person.

[(3)] *(4)* DEFINITION.—As used in this subsection, the term "issuer" includes any person who is a director or partner of the issuer, and the principal executive officer or officers, principal financial officer, and controller or principal accounting officer of the issuer (and any person occupying a similar status or performing a similar function) that offers or sells a security in a transaction exempted by the provisions of [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)*, and any person who offers or sells the security in such offering.

(d) INFORMATION AVAILABLE TO STATES.—The Commission shall make, or shall cause to be made by the relevant broker or funding portal, the information described in subsection (b) and such other information as the Commission, by rule, determines appropriate, available to the securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of each State and territory of the United States and the District of Columbia.

(e) RESTRICTIONS ON SALES.—Securities issued pursuant to a transaction described in [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)*—

(1) may not be transferred by the purchaser of such securities during the 1-year period beginning on the date of purchase, unless such securities are transferred—

(A) to the issuer of the securities;

(B) to an accredited investor;

(C) as part of an offering registered with the Commission; or

(D) to a member of the family of the purchaser or the equivalent, or in connection with the death or divorce of the purchaser or other similar circumstance, in the discretion of the Commission; and

(2) shall be subject to such other limitations as the Commission shall, by rule, establish.

(f) APPLICABILITY.—[Section 4(6)] *Section 4(a)(6)* shall not apply to transactions involving the offer or sale of securities by any issuer that—

(1) is not organized under and subject to the laws of a State or territory of the United States or the District of Columbia;

(2) is subject to the requirement to file reports pursuant to section 13 or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; *or*

[(3) is an investment company, as defined in section 3 of the Investment Company Act of 1940, or is excluded from the definition of investment company by section 3(b) or section 3(c) of that Act; or]

[(4)] *(3)* the Commission, by rule or regulation, determines appropriate.

(g) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this section or [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)* shall be construed as preventing an issuer from raising capital through methods not described under [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)*.

(h) CERTAIN CALCULATIONS.—

(1) DOLLAR AMOUNTS.—Dollar amounts in [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)* and subsection (b) of this section shall be adjusted by the Commission not less frequently than once every 5 years, by notice published in the Federal Register to reflect any

change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics.

(2) INCOME AND NET WORTH.—The income and net worth of a natural person under [section 4(6)(B)] *section 4(a)(6)(B)* shall be calculated in accordance with any rules of the Commission under this title regarding the calculation of the income and net worth, respectively, of an accredited investor.

* * * * * * *

SEC. 18. EXEMPTION FROM STATE REGULATION OF SECURITIES OFFERINGS.

(a) SCOPE OF EXEMPTION.—Except as otherwise provided in this section, no law, rule, regulation, or order, or other administrative action of any State or any political subdivision thereof—

(1) requiring, or with respect to, registration or qualification of securities, or registration or qualification of securities transactions, shall directly or indirectly apply to a security that—

(A) is a covered security; or

(B) will be a covered security upon completion of the transaction;

(2) shall directly or indirectly prohibit, limit, or impose any conditions upon the use of—

(A) with respect to a covered security described in subsection (b), any offering document that is prepared by or on behalf of the issuer; or

(B) any proxy statement, report to shareholders, or other disclosure document relating to a covered security or the issuer thereof that is required to be and is filed with the Commission or any national securities organization registered under section 15A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, except that this subparagraph does not apply to the laws, rules, regulations, or orders, or other administrative actions of the State of incorporation of the issuer; [or]

(3) shall directly or indirectly prohibit, limit, or impose conditions, based on the merits of such offering or issuer, upon the offer or sale of any security described in paragraph (1)[.]*; or*

(4) shall directly or indirectly prohibit, limit, or impose any conditions upon the off-exchange secondary trading (as such term is defined by the Commission) in securities of an issuer that makes current information publicly available, including—

(A) the information required in the periodic and current reports described under paragraph (b) of section 230.257 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations; or

(B) the documents and information required with respect to Tier 2 offerings, as defined in section 230.251(a) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) COVERED SECURITIES.—For purposes of this section, the following are covered securities:

(1) EXCLUSIVE FEDERAL REGISTRATION OF NATIONALLY TRADED SECURITIES.—A security is a covered security if such security is—

(A) a security designated as qualified for trading in the national market system pursuant to section 11A(a)(2) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78k–

1(a)(2)) that is listed, or authorized for listing, on a national securities exchange (or tier or segment thereof); or

(B) a security of the same issuer that is equal in seniority or that is a senior security to a security described in subparagraph (A).

(2) EXCLUSIVE FEDERAL REGISTRATION OF INVESTMENT COMPANIES.—A security is a covered security if such security is a security issued by an investment company that is registered, or that has filed a registration statement, under the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(3) SALES TO QUALIFIED PURCHASERS.—A security is a covered security with respect to the offer or sale of the security to qualified purchasers, as defined by the Commission by rule. In prescribing such rule, the Commission may define the term "qualified purchaser" differently with respect to different categories of securities, consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

(4) EXEMPTION IN CONNECTION WITH CERTAIN EXEMPT OFFERINGS.—A security is a covered security with respect to a transaction that is exempt from registration under this title pursuant to—

(A) paragraph (1) or (3) of section 4, and the issuer of such security files reports with the Commission **[**pursuant to section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934;**]** *pursuant to—*

(i) section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78m, 78o(d)); or

(ii) section 4A(b) or any regulation issued under that section;

(B) section 4(4);

(C) **[**section 4(6)**]** *section 4(a)(6)*;

(D) a rule or regulation adopted pursuant to section 3(b)(2) and such security is—

(i) offered or sold on a national securities exchange; or

(ii) offered or sold to a qualified purchaser, as defined by the Commission pursuant to paragraph (3) with respect to that purchase or sale;

(E) section 3(a), other than the offer or sale of a security that is exempt from such registration pursuant to paragraph (4), (10), or (11) of such section, except that a municipal security that is exempt from such registration pursuant to paragraph (2) of such section is not a covered security with respect to the offer or sale of such security in the State in which the issuer of such security is located;

(F) Commission rules or regulations issued under section 4(2), except that this subparagraph does not prohibit a State from imposing notice filing requirements that are substantially similar to those required by rule or regulation under section 4(2) that are in effect on September 1, 1996; **[**or**]**

(G) section 4(a)(7)**[**.**]***; or*

(H) section 4(a)(8).

(c) PRESERVATION OF AUTHORITY.—

(1) FRAUD AUTHORITY.—Consistent with this section, the securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of any State shall retain jurisdiction under the laws of such State to investigate and bring enforcement actions, in connection with securities or securities transactions

(A) with respect to—

(i) fraud or deceit; or

(ii) unlawful conduct by a broker or dealer; and

(B) in connection to a transaction described under [section 4(6)] *section 4(a)(6)*, with respect to—

(i) fraud or deceit; or

(ii) unlawful conduct by a broker, dealer, funding portal, or issuer.

(2) PRESERVATION OF FILING REQUIREMENTS.—

(A) NOTICE FILINGS PERMITTED.—Nothing in this section prohibits the securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of any State from requiring the filing of any document filed with the Commission pursuant to this title, together with annual or periodic reports of the value of securities sold or offered to be sold to persons located in the State (if such sales data is not included in documents filed with the Commission), solely for notice purposes and the assessment of any fee, together with a consent to service of process and any required fee.

(B) PRESERVATION OF FEES.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—Until otherwise provided by law, rule, regulation, or order, or other administrative action of any State or any political subdivision thereof, adopted after the date of enactment of the National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996, filing or registration fees with respect to securities or securities transactions shall continue to be collected in amounts determined pursuant to State law as in effect on the day before such date.

(ii) SCHEDULE.—The fees required by this subparagraph shall be paid, and all necessary supporting data on sales or offers for sales required under subparagraph (A), shall be reported on the same schedule as would have been applicable had the issuer not relied on the exemption provided in subsection (a).

(C) AVAILABILITY OF PREEMPTION CONTINGENT ON PAYMENT OF FEES.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—During the period beginning on the date of enactment of the National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996 and ending 3 years after that date of enactment, the securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of any State may require the registration of securities issued by any issuer who refuses to pay the fees required by subparagraph (B).

(ii) DELAYS.—For purposes of this subparagraph, delays in payment of fees or underpayments of fees that are promptly remedied shall not constitute a refusal to pay fees.

(D) FEES NOT PERMITTED ON LISTED SECURITIES.—Notwithstanding subparagraphs (A), (B), and (C), no filing or fee may be required with respect to any security that is a covered security pursuant to subsection (b)(1), or will be such a covered security upon completion of the transaction, or is a security of the same issuer that is equal in seniority or that is a senior security to a security that is a covered security pursuant to subsection (b)(1).

(F) FEES NOT PERMITTED ON CROWDFUNDED SECURITIES.—Notwithstanding subparagraphs (A), (B), and (C), no filing or fee may be required with respect to any security that is a covered security pursuant to subsection (b)(4)(B), or will be such a covered security upon completion of the transaction, except for the securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of the State of the principal place of business of the issuer, or any State in which purchasers of 50 percent or greater of the aggregate amount of the issue are residents, provided that for purposes of this subparagraph, the term "State" includes the District of Columbia and the territories of the United States.

(3) ENFORCEMENT OF REQUIREMENTS.—Nothing in this section shall prohibit the securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of any State from suspending the offer or sale of securities within such State as a result of the failure to submit any filing or fee required under law and permitted under this section.

(d) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

(1) OFFERING DOCUMENT.—The term "offering document"—

(A) has the meaning given the term "prospectus" in section 2(a)(10), but without regard to the provisions of subparagraphs (a) and (b) of that section; and

(B) includes a communication that is not deemed to offer a security pursuant to a rule of the Commission.

(2) PREPARED BY OR ON BEHALF OF THE ISSUER.—Not later than 6 months after the date of enactment of the National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996, the Commission shall, by rule, define the term "prepared by or on behalf of the issuer" for purposes of this section.

(3) STATE.—The term "State" has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

(4) SENIOR SECURITY.—The term "senior security" means any bond, debenture, note, or similar obligation or instrument constituting a security and evidencing indebtedness, and any stock of a class having priority over any other class as to distribution of assets or payment of dividends.

* * * * * * *

SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

TITLE I—REGULATION OF SECURITIES EXCHANGES

* * * * * * *

DEFINITIONS AND APPLICATION OF TITLE

SEC. 3. (a) When used in this title, unless the context otherwise requires—

(1) The term "exchange" means any organization, association, or group of persons, whether incorporated or unincorporated, which constitutes, maintains, or provides a market place or facilities for bringing together purchasers and sellers of securities or for otherwise performing with respect to securities the functions commonly performed by a stock exchange as that term is generally understood, and includes the market place and the market facilities maintained by such exchange.

(2) The term "facility" when used with respect to an exchange includes its premises, tangible or intangible property whether on the premises or not, any right to the use of such premises or property or any service thereof for the purpose of effecting or reporting a transaction on an exchange (including, among other things, any system of communication to or from the exchange, by ticker or otherwise, maintained by or with the consent of the exchange), and any right of the exchange to the use of any property or service.

(3)(A) The term "member" when used with respect to a national securities exchange means (i) any natural person permitted to effect transactions on the floor of the exchange without the services of another person acting as broker, (ii) any registered broker or dealer with which such a natural person is associated, (iii) any registered broker or dealer permitted to designate as a representative such a natural person, and (iv) any other registered broker or dealer which agrees to be regulated by such exchange and with respect to which the exchange undertakes to enforce compliance with the provisions of this title, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its own rules. For purposes of sections 6(b)(1), 6(b)(4), 6(b)(6), 6(b)(7), 6(d), 17(d), 19(d), 19(e), 19(g), 19(h), and 21 of this title, the term "member" when used with respect to a national securities exchange also means, to the extent of the rules of the exchange specified by the Commission, any person required by the Commission to comply with such rules pursuant to section 6(f) of this title.

(B) The term "member" when used with respect to a registered securities association means any broker or dealer who agrees to be regulated by such association and with respect to whom the association undertakes to enforce compliance with the provisions of this title, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its own rules.

(4) BROKER.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "broker" means any person engaged in the business of effecting transactions in securities for the account of others.

(B) EXCEPTION FOR CERTAIN BANK ACTIVITIES.—A bank shall not be considered to be a broker because the bank engages in any one or more of the following activities under the conditions described:

(i) THIRD PARTY BROKERAGE ARRANGEMENTS.—The bank enters into a contractual or other written ar-

rangement with a broker or dealer registered under this title under which the broker or dealer offers brokerage services on or off the premises of the bank if—

(I) such broker or dealer is clearly identified as the person performing the brokerage services;

(II) the broker or dealer performs brokerage services in an area that is clearly marked and, to the extent practicable, physically separate from the routine deposit-taking activities of the bank;

(III) any materials used by the bank to advertise or promote generally the availability of brokerage services under the arrangement clearly indicate that the brokerage services are being provided by the broker or dealer and not by the bank;

(IV) any materials used by the bank to advertise or promote generally the availability of brokerage services under the arrangement are in compliance with the Federal securities laws before distribution;

(V) bank employees (other than associated persons of a broker or dealer who are qualified pursuant to the rules of a self-regulatory organization) perform only clerical or ministerial functions in connection with brokerage transactions including scheduling appointments with the associated persons of a broker or dealer, except that bank employees may forward customer funds or securities and may describe in general terms the types of investment vehicles available from the bank and the broker or dealer under the arrangement;

(VI) bank employees do not receive incentive compensation for any brokerage transaction unless such employees are associated persons of a broker or dealer and are qualified pursuant to the rules of a self-regulatory organization, except that the bank employees may receive compensation for the referral of any customer if the compensation is a nominal one-time cash fee of a fixed dollar amount and the payment of the fee is not contingent on whether the referral results in a transaction;

(VII) such services are provided by the broker or dealer on a basis in which all customers that receive any services are fully disclosed to the broker or dealer;

(VIII) the bank does not carry a securities account of the customer except as permitted under clause (ii) or (viii) of this subparagraph; and

(IX) the bank, broker, or dealer informs each customer that the brokerage services are provided by the broker or dealer and not by the bank and that the securities are not deposits or other obligations of the bank, are not guaranteed by the bank, and are not insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

(ii) TRUST ACTIVITIES.—The bank effects transactions in a trustee capacity, or effects transactions in a fiduciary capacity in its trust department or other department that is regularly examined by bank examiners for compliance with fiduciary principles and standards, and—

(I) is chiefly compensated for such transactions, consistent with fiduciary principles and standards, on the basis of an administration or annual fee (payable on a monthly, quarterly, or other basis), a percentage of assets under management, or a flat or capped per order processing fee equal to not more than the cost incurred by the bank in connection with executing securities transactions for trustee and fiduciary customers, or any combination of such fees; and

(II) does not publicly solicit brokerage business, other than by advertising that it effects transactions in securities in conjunction with advertising its other trust activities.

(iii) PERMISSIBLE SECURITIES TRANSACTIONS.—The bank effects transactions in—

(I) commercial paper, bankers acceptances, or commercial bills;

(II) exempted securities;

(III) qualified Canadian government obligations as defined in section 5136 of the Revised Statutes, in conformity with section 15C of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, or obligations of the North American Development Bank; or

(IV) any standardized, credit enhanced debt security issued by a foreign government pursuant to the March 1989 plan of then Secretary of the Treasury Brady, used by such foreign government to retire outstanding commercial bank loans.

(iv) CERTAIN STOCK PURCHASE PLANS.—

(I) EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS.—The bank effects transactions, as part of its transfer agency activities, in the securities of an issuer as part of any pension, retirement, profit-sharing, bonus, thrift, savings, incentive, or other similar benefit plan for the employees of that issuer or its affiliates (as defined in section 2 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956), if the bank does not solicit transactions or provide investment advice with respect to the purchase or sale of securities in connection with the plan.

(II) DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT PLANS.—The bank effects transactions, as part of its transfer agency activities, in the securities of an issuer as part of that issuer's dividend reinvestment plan, if—

(aa) the bank does not solicit transactions or provide investment advice with respect to the purchase or sale of securities in connection with the plan; and

(bb) the bank does not net shareholders' buy and sell orders, other than for programs for odd-lot holders or plans registered with the Commission.

(III) ISSUER PLANS.—The bank effects transactions, as part of its transfer agency activities, in the securities of an issuer as part of a plan or program for the purchase or sale of that issuer's shares, if—

(aa) the bank does not solicit transactions or provide investment advice with respect to the purchase or sale of securities in connection with the plan or program; and

(bb) the bank does not net shareholders' buy and sell orders, other than for programs for odd-lot holders or plans registered with the Commission.

(IV) PERMISSIBLE DELIVERY OF MATERIALS.—The exception to being considered a broker for a bank engaged in activities described in subclauses (I), (II), and (III) will not be affected by delivery of written or electronic plan materials by a bank to employees of the issuer, shareholders of the issuer, or members of affinity groups of the issuer, so long as such materials are—

(aa) comparable in scope or nature to that permitted by the Commission as of the date of the enactment of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act; or

(bb) otherwise permitted by the Commission.

(v) SWEEP ACCOUNTS.—The bank effects transactions as part of a program for the investment or reinvestment of deposit funds into any no-load, open-end management investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 that holds itself out as a money market fund.

(vi) AFFILIATE TRANSACTIONS.—The bank effects transactions for the account of any affiliate of the bank (as defined in section 2 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956) other than—

(I) a registered broker or dealer; or

(II) an affiliate that is engaged in merchant banking, as described in section 4(k)(4)(H) of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956.

(vii) PRIVATE SECURITIES OFFERINGS.—The bank—

(I) effects sales as part of a primary offering of securities not involving a public offering, pursuant to section 3(b), 4(2), or 4(5) of the Securities Act of 1933 or the rules and regulations issued thereunder;

(II) at any time after the date that is 1 year after the date of the enactment of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, is not affiliated with a broker or dealer that has been registered for more than 1

year in accordance with this Act, and engages in dealing, market making, or underwriting activities, other than with respect to exempted securities; and

(III) if the bank is not affiliated with a broker or dealer, does not effect any primary offering described in subclause (I) the aggregate amount of which exceeds 25 percent of the capital of the bank, except that the limitation of this subclause shall not apply with respect to any sale of government securities or municipal securities.

(viii) SAFEKEEPING AND CUSTODY ACTIVITIES.—

(I) IN GENERAL.—The bank, as part of customary banking activities—

(aa) provides safekeeping or custody services with respect to securities, including the exercise of warrants and other rights on behalf of customers;

(bb) facilitates the transfer of funds or securities, as a custodian or a clearing agency, in connection with the clearance and settlement of its customers' transactions in securities;

(cc) effects securities lending or borrowing transactions with or on behalf of customers as part of services provided to customers pursuant to division (aa) or (bb) or invests cash collateral pledged in connection with such transactions;

(dd) holds securities pledged by a customer to another person or securities subject to purchase or resale agreements involving a customer, or facilitates the pledging or transfer of such securities by book entry or as otherwise provided under applicable law, if the bank maintains records separately identifying the securities and the customer; or

(ee) serves as a custodian or provider of other related administrative services to any individual retirement account, pension, retirement, profit sharing, bonus, thrift savings, incentive, or other similar benefit plan.

(II) EXCEPTION FOR CARRYING BROKER ACTIVITIES.—The exception to being considered a broker for a bank engaged in activities described in subclause (I) shall not apply if the bank, in connection with such activities, acts in the United States as a carrying broker (as such term, and different formulations thereof, are used in section 15(c)(3) of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder) for any broker or dealer, unless such carrying broker activities are engaged in with respect to government securities (as defined in paragraph (42) of this subsection).

(ix) IDENTIFIED BANKING PRODUCTS.—The bank effects transactions in identified banking products as defined in section 206 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act.

(x) MUNICIPAL SECURITIES.—The bank effects transactions in municipal securities.

(xi) DE MINIMIS EXCEPTION.—The bank effects, other than in transactions referred to in clauses (i) through (x), not more than 500 transactions in securities in any calendar year, and such transactions are not effected by an employee of the bank who is also an employee of a broker or dealer.

(C) EXECUTION BY BROKER OR DEALER.—The exception to being considered a broker for a bank engaged in activities described in clauses (ii), (iv), and (viii) of subparagraph (B) shall not apply if the activities described in such provisions result in the trade in the United States of any security that is a publicly traded security in the United States, unless—

(i) the bank directs such trade to a registered broker or dealer for execution;

(ii) the trade is a cross trade or other substantially similar trade of a security that—

(I) is made by the bank or between the bank and an affiliated fiduciary; and

(II) is not in contravention of fiduciary principles established under applicable Federal or State law; or

(iii) the trade is conducted in some other manner permitted under rules, regulations, or orders as the Commission may prescribe or issue.

(D) FIDUCIARY CAPACITY.—For purposes of subparagraph (B)(ii), the term "fiduciary capacity" means—

(i) in the capacity as trustee, executor, administrator, registrar of stocks and bonds, transfer agent, guardian, assignee, receiver, or custodian under a uniform gift to minor act, or as an investment adviser if the bank receives a fee for its investment advice;

(ii) in any capacity in which the bank possesses investment discretion on behalf of another; or

(iii) in any other similar capacity.

(E) EXCEPTION FOR ENTITIES SUBJECT TO SECTION 15(e).—The term "broker" does not include a bank that—

(i) was, on the day before the date of enactment of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, subject to section 15(e); and

(ii) is subject to such restrictions and requirements as the Commission considers appropriate.

(F) JOINT RULEMAKING REQUIRED.—The Commission and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall jointly adopt a single set of rules or regulations to implement the exceptions in subparagraph (B).

(G) PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKERS.—A private placement broker as defined in section 15(p)(4) is not a broker for the purposes of this Act.

(5) DEALER.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "dealer" means any person engaged in the business of buying and selling securities (not including security-based swaps, other than security-based swaps with or for persons that are not eligible contract participants) for such person's own account through a broker or otherwise.

(B) EXCEPTION FOR PERSON NOT ENGAGED IN THE BUSINESS OF DEALING.—The term "dealer" does not include a person that buys or sells securities (not including security-based swaps, other than security-based swaps with or for persons that are not eligible contract participants) for such person's own account, either individually or in a fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business.

(C) EXCEPTION FOR CERTAIN BANK ACTIVITIES.—A bank shall not be considered to be a dealer because the bank engages in any of the following activities under the conditions described:

(i) PERMISSIBLE SECURITIES TRANSACTIONS.—The bank buys or sells—

(I) commercial paper, bankers acceptances, or commercial bills;

(II) exempted securities;

(III) qualified Canadian government obligations as defined in section 5136 of the Revised Statutes of the United States, in conformity with section 15C of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, or obligations of the North American Development Bank; or

(IV) any standardized, credit enhanced debt security issued by a foreign government pursuant to the March 1989 plan of then Secretary of the Treasury Brady, used by such foreign government to retire outstanding commercial bank loans.

(ii) INVESTMENT, TRUSTEE, AND FIDUCIARY TRANSACTIONS.—The bank buys or sells securities for investment purposes—

(I) for the bank; or

(II) for accounts for which the bank acts as a trustee or fiduciary.

(iii) ASSET-BACKED TRANSACTIONS.—The bank engages in the issuance or sale to qualified investors, through a grantor trust or other separate entity, of securities backed by or representing an interest in notes, drafts, acceptances, loans, leases, receivables, other obligations (other than securities of which the bank is not the issuer), or pools of any such obligations predominantly originated by—

(I) the bank;

(II) an affiliate of any such bank other than a broker or dealer; or

(III) a syndicate of banks of which the bank is a member, if the obligations or pool of obligations consists of mortgage obligations or consumer-related receivables.

(iv) IDENTIFIED BANKING PRODUCTS.—The bank buys or sells identified banking products, as defined in section 206 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act.

(6) The term "bank" means (A) a banking institution organized under the laws of the United States or a Federal savings association, as defined in section 2(5) of the Home Owners' Loan Act, (B) a member bank of the Federal Reserve System, (C) any other banking institution or savings association, as defined in section 2(4) of the Home Owners' Loan Act, whether incorporated or not, doing business under the laws of any State or of the United States, a substantial portion of the business of which consists of receiving deposits or exercising fiduciary powers similar to those permitted to national banks under the authority of the Comptroller of the Currency pursuant to the first section of Public Law 87–722 (12 U.S.C. 92a), and which is supervised and examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over banks or savings associations, and which is not operated for the purpose of evading the provisions of this title, and (D) a receiver, conservator, or other liquidating agent of any institution or firm included in clauses (A), (B), or (C) of this paragraph.

(7) The term "director" means any director of a corporation or any person performing similar functions with respect to any organization, whether incorporated or unincorporated.

(8) The term "issuer" means any person who issues or proposes to issue any security; except that with respect to certificates of deposit for securities, voting-trust certificates, or collateral-trust certificates, or with respect to certificates of interest or shares in an unincorporated investment trust not having a board of directors or of the fixed, restricted management, or unit type, the term "issuer" means the person or persons performing the acts and assuming the duties of depositor or manager pursuant to the provisions of the trust or other agreement or instrument under which such securities are issued; and except that with respect to equipment-trust certificates or like securities, the term "issuer" means the person by whom the equipment or property is, or is to be, used.

(9) The term "person" means a natural person, company, government, or political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality of a government.

(10) The term "security" means any note, stock, treasury stock, security future, security-based swap,bond, debenture, certificate of interest or participation in any profit-sharing agreement or in any oil, gas, or other mineral royalty or lease, any collateral-trust certificate, preorganization certificate or subscription, transferable share, investment contract, voting-trust certificate, certificate of deposit for a security, any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency, or in general, any instrument commonly known as a "security"; or any certificate of interest or participation in, temporary or interim certificate for, receipt for, or warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase, any

of the foregoing; but shall not include currency or any note, draft, bill of exchange, or banker's acceptance which has a maturity at the time of issuance of not exceeding nine months, exclusive of days of grace, or any renewal thereof the maturity of which is likewise limited.

(11) The term "equity security" means any stock or similar security; or any security future on any such security; or any security convertible, with or without consideration, into such a security, or carrying any warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase such a security; or any such warrant or right; or any other security which the Commission shall deem to be of similar nature and consider necessary or appropriate, by such rules and regulations as it may prescribe in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to treat as an equity security.

(12)(A) The term "exempted security" or "exempted securities" includes—

(i) government securities, as defined in paragraph (42) of this subsection;

(ii) municipal securities, as defined in paragraph (29) of this subsection;

(iii) any interest or participation in any common trust fund or similar fund that is excluded from the definition of the term "investment company" under section 3(c)(3) of the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(iv) any interest or participation in a single trust fund, or a collective trust fund maintained by a bank, or any security arising out of a contract issued by an insurance company, which interest, participation, or security is issued in connection with a qualified plan as defined in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph;

(v) any security issued by or any interest or participation in any pooled income fund, collective trust fund, collective investment fund, or similar fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(vi) solely for purposes of sections 12, 13, 14, and 16 of this title, any security issued by or any interest or participation in any church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940; and

(vii) such other securities (which may include, among others, unregistered securities, the market in which is predominantly intrastate) as the Commission may, by such rules and regulations as it deems consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions or for stated periods, exempt from the operation of any one or more provisions of this title which by their terms do not apply to an "exempted security" or to "exempted securities".

(B)(i) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A)(i) of this paragraph, government securities shall not be deemed to be "exempted securities" for the purposes of section 17A of this title.

(ii) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A)(ii) of this paragraph, municipal securities shall not be deemed to be "exempted securities" for the purposes of sections 15 and 17A of this title.

(C) For purposes of subparagraph (A)(iv) of this paragraph, the term "qualified plan" means (i) a stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plan which meets the requirements for qualification under section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, (ii) an annuity plan which meets the requirements for the deduction of the employer's contribution under section 404(a)(2) of such Code, (iii) a governmental plan as defined in section 414(d) of such Code which has been established by an employer for the exclusive benefit of its employees or their beneficiaries for the purpose of distributing to such employees or their beneficiaries the corpus and income of the funds accumulated under such plan, if under such plan it is impossible, prior to the satisfaction of all liabilities with respect to such employees and their beneficiaries, for any part of the corpus or income to be used for, or diverted to, purposes other than the exclusive benefit of such employees or their beneficiaries, or (iv) a church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, other than any plan described in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of this subparagraph which (I) covers employees some or all of whom are employees within the meaning of section 401(c) of such Code, or (II) is a plan funded by an annuity contract described in section 403(b) of such Code.

(13) The terms "buy" and "purchase" each include any contract to buy, purchase, or otherwise acquire. For security futures products, such term includes any contract, agreement, or transaction for future delivery. For security-based swaps, such terms include the execution, termination (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing of rights or obligations under, a security-based swap, as the context may require.

(14) The terms "sale" and "sell" each include any contract to sell or otherwise dispose of. For security futures products, such term includes any contract, agreement, or transaction for future delivery. For security-based swaps, such terms include the execution, termination (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing of rights or obligations under, a security-based swap, as the context may require.

(15) The term "Commission" means the Securities and Exchange Commission established by section 4 of this title.

(16) The term "State" means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, or any other possession of the United States.

(17) The term "interstate commerce" means trade, commerce, transportation, or communication among the several States, or between any foreign country and any State, or between any State and any place or ship outside thereof. The term also includes intrastate use of (A) any facility of a national securities exchange or of a telephone or other interstate means of communication, or (B) any other interstate instrumentality.

(18) The term "person associated with a broker or dealer" or "associated person of a broker or dealer" means any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such broker or dealer (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such broker or dealer, or any employee of such broker or dealer, except that any person associated with a broker or dealer whose functions are solely clerical or ministerial shall not be included in the meaning of such term for purposes of section 15(b) of this title (other than paragraph (6) thereof).

(19) The terms "investment company,""affiliated person,""insurance company,""separate account," and "company" have the same meanings as in the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(20) The terms "investment adviser" and "underwriter" have the same meanings as in the Investment Advisers Act of 1940.

(21) The term "persons associated with a member" or "associated person of a member" when used with respect to a member of a national securities exchange or registered securities association means any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such member (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such member, or any employee of such member.

(22)(A) The term "securities information processor" means any person engaged in the business of (i) collecting, processing, or preparing for distribution or publication, or assisting, participating in, or coordinating the distribution or publication of, information with respect to transactions in or quotations for any security (other than an exempted security) or (ii) distributing or publishing (whether by means of a ticker tape, a communications network, a terminal display device, or otherwise) on a current and continuing basis, information with respect to such transactions or quotations. The term "securities information processor" does not include any bona fide newspaper, news magazine, or business or financial publication of general and regular circulation, any self-regulatory organization, any bank, broker, dealer, building and loan, savings and loan, or homestead association, or cooperative bank, if such bank, broker, dealer, association, or cooperative bank would be deemed to be a securities information processor solely by reason of functions performed by such institutions as part of customary banking, brokerage, dealing, association, or cooperative bank activities, or any common carrier, as defined in section 3 of the Communications Act of 1934, subject to the jurisdiction of the Federal Communications Commission or a State commission, as defined in section 3 of that Act, unless the Commission determines that such carrier is engaged in the business of collecting, processing, or preparing for distribution or publication, information with respect to transactions in or quotations for any security.

(B) The term "exclusive processor" means any securities information processor or self-regulatory organization which, directly or indirectly, engages on an exclusive basis on behalf of

any national securities exchange or registered securities association, or any national securities exchange or registered securities association which engages on an exclusive basis on its own behalf, in collecting, processing, or preparing for distribution or publication any information with respect to (i) transactions or quotations on or effected or made by means of any facility of such exchange or (ii) quotations distributed or published by means of any electronic system operated or controlled by such association.

(23)(A) The term "clearing agency" means any person who acts as an intermediary in making payments or deliveries or both in connection with transactions in securities or who provides facilities for comparison of data respecting the terms of settlement of securities transactions, to reduce the number of settlements of securities transactions, or for the allocation of securities settlement responsibilities. Such term also means any person, such as a securities depository, who (i) acts as a custodian of securities in connection with a system for the central handling of securities whereby all securities of a particular class or series of any issuer deposited within the system are treated as fungible and may be transferred, loaned, or pledged by bookkeeping entry without physical delivery of securities certificates, or (ii) otherwise permits or facilitates the settlement of securities transactions or the hypothecation or lending of securities without physical delivery of securities certificates.

(B) The term "clearing agency" does not include (i) any Federal Reserve bank, Federal home loan bank, or Federal land bank; (ii) any national securities exchange or registered securities association solely by reason of its providing facilities for comparison of data respecting the terms of settlement of securities transactions effected on such exchange or by means of any electronic system operated or controlled by such association; (iii) any bank, broker, dealer, building and loan, savings and loan, or homestead association, or cooperative bank if such bank, broker, dealer, association, or cooperative bank would be deemed to be a clearing agency solely by reason of functions performed by such institution as part of customary banking, brokerage, dealing, association, or cooperative banking activities, or solely by reason of acting on behalf of a clearing agency or a participant therein in connection with the furnishing by the clearing agency of services to its participants or the use of services of the clearing agency by its participants, unless the Commission, by rule, otherwise provides as necessary or appropriate to assure the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions or to prevent evasion of this title; (iv) any life insurance company, its registered separate accounts, or a subsidiary of such insurance company solely by reason of functions commonly performed by such entities in connection with variable annuity contracts or variable life policies issued by such insurance company or its separate accounts; (v) any registered open-end investment company or unit investment trust solely by reason of functions commonly performed by it in connection with shares in such registered open-end investment company or unit investment trust, or (vi)

any person solely by reason of its performing functions described in paragraph 25(E) of this subsection.

(24) The term "participant" when used with respect to a clearing agency means any person who uses a clearing agency to clear or settle securities transactions or to transfer, pledge, lend, or hypothecate securities. Such term does not include a person whose only use of a clearing agency is (A) through another person who is a participant or (B) as a pledgee of securities.

(25) The term "transfer agent" means any person who engages on behalf of an issuer of securities or on behalf of itself as an issuer of securities in (A) countersigning such securities upon issuance; (B) monitoring the issuance of such securities with a view to preventing unauthorized issuance, a function commonly performed by a person called a registrar; (C) registering the transfer of such securities; (D) exchanging or converting such securities; or (E) transferring record ownership of securities by bookkeeping entry without physical issuance of securities certificates. The term "transfer agent" does not include any insurance company or separate account which performs such functions solely with respect to variable annuity contracts or variable life policies which it issues or any registered clearing agency which performs such functions solely with respect to options contracts which it issues.

(26) The term "self-regulatory organization" means any national securities exchange, registered securities association, or registered clearing agency, or (solely for purposes of sections 19(b), 19(c), and 23(b) of this title) the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board established by section 15B of this title.

(27) The term "rules of an exchange", "rules of an association", or "rules of a clearing agency" means the constitution, articles of incorporation, bylaws, and rules, or instruments corresponding to the foregoing, of an exchange, association of brokers and dealers, or clearing agency, respectively, and such of the stated policies, practices, and interpretations of such exchange, association, or clearing agency as the Commission, by rule, may determine to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to be deemed to be rules of such exchange, association, or clearing agency.

(28) The term "rules of a self-regulatory organization" means the rules of an exchange which is a national securities exchange, the rules of an association of brokers and dealers which is a registered securities association, the rules of a clearing agency which is a registered clearing agency, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

(29) The term "municipal securities" means securities which are direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal or interest by, a State or any political subdivision thereof, or any agency or instrumentality of a State or any political subdivision thereof, or any municipal corporate instrumentality of one or more States, or any security which is an industrial development bond (as defined in section 103(c)(2) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954) the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1) of such Code if, by reason of the application of paragraph (4) or (6) of section

103(c) of such Code (determined as if paragraphs (4)(A), (5), and (7) were not included in such section 103(c)), paragraph (1) of such section 103(c) does not apply to such security.

(30) The term "municipal securities dealer" means any person (including a separately identifiable department or division of a bank) engaged in the business of buying and selling municipal securities for his own account, through a broker or otherwise, but does not include—

(A) any person insofar as he buys or sells such securities for his own account, either individually or in some fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business; or

(B) a bank, unless the bank is engaged in the business of buying and selling municipal securities for its own account other than in a fiduciary capacity, through a broker or otherwise; *Provided, however,* That if the bank is engaged in such business through a separately identifiable department or division (as defined by the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board in accordance with section 15B(b)(2)(H) of this title), the department or division and not the bank itself shall be deemed to be the municipal securities dealer.

(31) The term "municipal securities broker" means a broker engaged in the business of effecting transactions in municipal securities for the account of others.

(32) The term "person associated with a municipal securities dealer" when used with respect to a municipal securities dealer which is a bank or a division or department of a bank means any person directly engaged in the management, direction, supervision, or performance of any of the municipal securities dealer's activities with respect to municipal securities, and any person directly or indirectly controlling such activities or controlled by the municipal securities dealer in connection with such activities.

(33) The term "municipal securities investment portfolio" means all municipal securities held for investment and not for sale as part of a regular business by a municipal securities dealer or by a person, directly or indirectly, controlling, controlled by, or under common control with a municipal securities dealer.

(34) The term "appropriate regulatory agency" means—

(A) When used with respect to a municipal securities dealer:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank, a subsidiary or a department or division of any such bank, a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary or department or division of any such Federal savings association;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a subsidiary or a department or division thereof, a bank holding company, a subsidiary of a bank holding company which is a bank

other than a bank specified in clause (i), (iii), or (iv) of this subparagraph, a subsidiary or a department or division of such subsidiary, or a savings and loan holding company;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System), a subsidiary or department or division of any such bank, a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary or a department or division of any such State savings association; and

(iv) the Commission in the case of all other municipal securities dealers.

(B) When used with respect to a clearing agency or transfer agent:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank, a subsidiary of any such bank, a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary of any such Federal savings association;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a subsidiary thereof, a bank holding company, a subsidiary of a bank holding company that is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i) or (iii) of this subparagraph, or a savings and loan holding company;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System), a subsidiary of any such bank, a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a subsidiary of any such State savings association; and

(iv) the Commission in the case of all other clearing agencies and transfer agents.

(C) When used with respect to a participant or applicant to become a participant in a clearing agency or a person requesting or having access to services offered by a clearing agency:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank or a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation when the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency is not the Commission;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a bank holding company, or a subsidiary of a bank holding company, a subsidiary of a bank holding company that is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i) or (iii) of this subparagraph, or a savings and loan holding company when the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency is not the Commission;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System) or a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation; and when the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency is not the Commission;

(iv) the Commission in all other cases.

(D) When used with respect to an institutional investment manager which is a bank the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank or a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of any other member bank of the Federal Reserve System; and

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of any other insured bank or a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

(E) When used with respect to a national securities exchange or registered securities association, member thereof, person associated with a member thereof, applicant to become a member thereof or to become associated with a member thereof, or person requesting or having access to services offered by such exchange or association or member thereof, or the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, the Commission.

(F) When used with respect to a person exercising investment discretion with respect to an account:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank or a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(2))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System in the case of any other member bank of the Federal Reserve System;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of any other bank the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act or a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(b)(3))), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation; and

(iv) the Commission in the case of all other such persons.

(G) When used with respect to a government securities broker or government securities dealer, or person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank, a Federal savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(2) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a Federal branch or Federal agency of a foreign bank (as such terms are used in the International Banking Act of 1978);

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a foreign bank, an uninsured State branch or State agency of a foreign bank, a commercial lending company owned or controlled by a foreign bank (as such terms are used in the International Banking Act of 1978), or a corporation organized or having an agreement with the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System pursuant to section 25 or section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System or a Federal savings bank), a State savings association (as defined in section 3(b)(3) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act), the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or an insured State branch of a foreign bank (as such terms are used in the International Banking Act of 1978); and

(iv) the Commission, in the case of all other government securities brokers and government securities dealers.

(H) When used with respect to an institution described in subparagraph (D), (F), or (G) of section 2(c)(2), or held under section 4(f), of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956—

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System or any corporation chartered under section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of any other bank the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act; or

(iv) the Commission in the case of all other such institutions.

As used in this paragraph, the terms "bank holding company" and "subsidiary of a bank holding company" have the meanings given them in section 2 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956. As used in this paragraph, the term "savings and loan holding company" has the same meaning as in section 10(a) of the Home Owners' Loan Act (12 U.S.C. 1467a(a)).

(35) A person exercises "investment discretion" with respect to an account if, directly or indirectly, such person (A) is authorized to determine what securities or other property shall be purchased or sold by or for the account, (B) makes decisions as to what securities or other property shall be purchased or sold by or for the account even though some other person may have responsibility for such investment decisions, or (C) otherwise exercises such influence with respect to the purchase and sale of securities or other property by or for the account as the Commission, by rule, determines, in the public interest or for the protection of investors, should be subject to the operation of the provisions of this title and rules and regulations thereunder.

(36) A class of persons or markets is subject to "equal regulation" if no member of the class has a competitive advantage over any other member thereof resulting from a disparity in their regulation under this title which the Commission determines is unfair and not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this title.

(37) The term "records" means accounts, correspondence, memorandums, tapes, discs, papers, books, and other documents or transcribed information of any type, whether expressed in ordinary or machine language.

(38) The term "market maker" means any specialist permitted to act as a dealer, any dealer acting in the capacity of block positioner, and any dealer who, with respect to a security, holds himself out (by entering quotations in an inter-dealer communications system or otherwise) as being willing to buy and sell such security for his own account on a regular or continuous basis.

(39) A person is subject to a "statutory disqualification" with respect to membership or participation in, or association with a member of, a self-regulatory organization, if such person—

(A) has been and is expelled or suspended from membership or participation in, or barred or suspended from being associated with a member of, any self-regulatory organization, foreign equivalent of a self-regulatory organization, foreign or international securities exchange, contract market designated pursuant to section 5 of the Commodity Ex-

change Act (7 U.S.C. 7), or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation, or futures association registered under section 17 of such Act (7 U.S.C. 21), or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation, or has been and is denied trading privileges on any such contract market or foreign equivalent;

(B) is subject to—

(i) an order of the Commission, other appropriate regulatory agency, or foreign financial regulatory authority—

(I) denying, suspending for a period not exceeding 12 months, or revoking his registration as a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, security-based swap dealer, or major security-based swap participant or limiting his activities as a foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above; or

(II) barring or suspending for a period not exceeding 12 months his being associated with a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant, or foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above;

(ii) an order of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission denying, suspending, or revoking his registration under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.); or

(iii) an order by a foreign financial regulatory authority denying, suspending, or revoking the person's authority to engage in transactions in contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery or other instruments traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market, board of trade, or foreign equivalent thereof;

(C) by his conduct while associated with a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, security-based swap dealer, or major security-based swap participant, or while associated with an entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act, has been found to be a cause of any effective suspension, expulsion, or order of the character described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph, and in entering such a suspension, expulsion, or order, the Commission, an appropriate regulatory agency, or any such self-regulatory organization shall have jurisdiction to find whether or not any person was a cause thereof;

(D) by his conduct while associated with any broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant, or any other entity engaged in transactions in securities, or while associated with an entity engaged in transactions in contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery or other instruments traded on or subject to the rules of a contract mar-

ket, board of trade, or foreign equivalent thereof, has been found to be a cause of any effective suspension, expulsion, or order by a foreign or international securities exchange or foreign financial regulatory authority empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws relating to financial transactions as described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph;

(E) has associated with him any person who is known, or in the exercise of reasonable care should be known, to him to be a person described by subparagraph (A), (B), (C), or (D) of this paragraph; or

(F) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 15(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) or any other felony within ten years of the date of the filing of an application for membership or participation in, or to become associated with a member of, such self-regulatory organization, is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4), has willfully made or caused to be made in any application for membership or participation in, or to become associated with a member of, a self-regulatory organization, report required to be filed with a self-regulatory organization, or proceeding before a self-regulatory organization, any statement which was at the time, and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such application, report, or proceeding any material fact which is required to be stated therein.

(40) The term "financial responsibility rules" means the rules and regulations of the Commission or the rules and regulations prescribed by any self-regulatory organization relating to financial responsibility and related practices which are designated by the Commission, by rule or regulation, to be financial responsibility rules.

(41) The term "mortgage related security" means a security that meets standards of credit-worthiness as established by the Commission, and either:

(A) represents ownership of one or more promissory notes or certificates of interest or participation in such notes (including any rights designed to assure servicing of, or the receipt or timeliness of receipt by the holders of such notes, certificates, or participations of amounts payable under, such notes, certificates, or participations), which notes:

(i) are directly secured by a first lien on a single parcel of real estate, including stock allocated to a dwelling unit in a residential cooperative housing corporation, upon which is located a dwelling or mixed residential and commercial structure, on a residential manufactured home as defined in section 603(6) of the National Manufactured Housing Construction and Safety Standards Act of 1974, whether such manufac-

tured home is considered real or personal property under the laws of the State in which it is to be located, or on one or more parcels of real estate upon which is located one or more commercial structures; and

(ii) were originated by a savings and loan association, savings bank, commercial bank, credit union, insurance company, or similar institution which is supervised and examined by a Federal or State authority, or by a mortgage approved by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development pursuant to sections 203 and 211 of the National Housing Act, or, where such notes involve a lien on the manufactured home, by any such institution or by any financial institution approved for insurance by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development pursuant to section 2 of the National Housing Act; or

(B) is secured by one or more promissory notes or certificates of interest or participations in such notes (with or without recourse to the issuer thereof) and, by its terms, provides for payments of principal in relation to payments, or reasonable projections of payments, on notes meeting the requirements of subparagraphs (A) (i) and (ii) or certificates of interest or participations in promissory notes meeting such requirements.

For the purpose of this paragraph, the term "promissory note", when used in connection with a manufactured home, shall also include a loan, advance, or credit sale as evidence by a retail installment sales contract or other instrument.

(42) The term "government securities" means—

(A) securities which are direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal or interest by, the United States;

(B) securities which are issued or guaranteed by the Tennessee Valley Authority or by corporations in which the United States has a direct or indirect interest and which are designated by the Secretary of the Treasury for exemption as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors;

(C) securities issued or guaranteed as to principal or interest by any corporation the securities of which are designated, by statute specifically naming such corporation, to constitute exempt securities within the meaning of the laws administered by the Commission;

(D) for purposes of sections 15C and 17A, any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on a security described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C) other than a put, call, straddle, option, or privilege—

(i) that is traded on one or more national securities exchanges; or

(ii) for which quotations are disseminated through an automated quotation system operated by a registered securities association; or

(E) for purposes of sections 15, 15C, and 17A as applied to a bank, a qualified Canadian government obligation as

defined in section 5136 of the Revised Statutes of the United States.

(43) The term "government securities broker" means any person regularly engaged in the business of effecting transactions in government securities for the account of others, but does not include—

(A) any corporation the securities of which are government securities under subparagraph (B) or (C) of paragraph (42) of this subsection; or

(B) any person registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, any contract market designated by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, such contract market's affiliated clearing organization, or any floor trader on such contract market, solely because such person effects transactions in government securities that the Commission, after consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, has determined by rule or order to be incidental to such person's futures-related business.

(44) The term "government securities dealer" means any person engaged in the business of buying and selling government securities for his own account, through a broker or otherwise, but does not include—

(A) any person insofar as he buys or sells such securities for his own account, either individually or in some fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business;

(B) any corporation the securities of which are government securities under subparagraph (B) or (C) of paragraph (42) of this subsection;

(C) any bank, unless the bank is engaged in the business of buying and selling government securities for its own account other than in a fiduciary capacity, through a broker or otherwise; or

(D) any person registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, any contract market designated by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, such contract market's affiliated clearing organization, or any floor trader on such contract market, solely because such person effects transactions in government securities that the Commission, after consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, has determined by rule or order to be incidental to such person's futures-related business.

(45) The term "person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer" means any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such government securities broker or government securities dealer (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), and any other employee of such government securities broker or government securities dealer who is engaged in the management, direction, supervision, or performance of any activities relating to government securities, and any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such government securities broker or government securities dealer.

(46) The term "financial institution" means—

(A) a bank (as defined in paragraph (6) of this subsection);

(B) a foreign bank (as such term is used in the International Banking Act of 1978); and

(C) a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act) the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

(47) The term "securities laws" means the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.), the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S.C. 77aaa et seq.), the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.), the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b et seq.), and the Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970 (15 U.S.C. 78aaa et seq.).

(48) The term "registered broker or dealer" means a broker or dealer registered or required to register pursuant to section 15 or 15B of this title, except that in paragraph (3) of this subsection and sections 6 and 15A the term means such a broker or dealer and a government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or required to register pursuant to section 15C(a)(1)(A) of this title.

(49) The terms "person associated with a transfer agent" and "associated person of a transfer agent" mean any person (except an employee whose functions are solely clerical or ministerial) directly engaged in the management, direction, supervision, or performance of any of the transfer agent's activities with respect to transfer agent functions, and any person directly or indirectly controlling such activities or controlled by the transfer agent in connection with such activities.

(50) The term "foreign securities authority" means any foreign government, or any governmental body or regulatory organization empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws as they relate to securities matters.

(51)(A) The term "penny stock" means any equity security other than a security that is—

(i) registered or approved for registration and traded on a national securities exchange that meets such criteria as the Commission shall prescribe by rule or regulation for purposes of this paragraph;

(ii) authorized for quotation on an automated quotation system sponsored by a registered securities association, if such system (I) was established and in operation before January 1, 1990, and (II) meets such criteria as the Commission shall prescribe by rule or regulation for purposes of this paragraph;

(iii) issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(iv) excluded, on the basis of exceeding a minimum price, net tangible assets of the issuer, or other relevant criteria, from the definition of such term by rule or regulation which the Commission shall prescribe for purposes of this paragraph; or

(v) exempted, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, from the definition of such term by rule, regulation, or order prescribed by the Commission.

(B) The Commission may, by rule, regulation, or order, designate any equity security or class of equity securities described in clause (i) or (ii) of subparagraph (A) as within the meaning of the term "penny stock" if such security or class of securities is traded other than on a national securities exchange or through an automated quotation system described in clause (ii) of subparagraph (A).

(C) In exercising its authority under this paragraph to prescribe rules, regulations, and orders, the Commission shall determine that such rule, regulation, or order is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

(52) The term "foreign financial regulatory authority" means any (A) foreign securities authority, (B) other governmental body or foreign equivalent of a self-regulatory organization empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws relating to the regulation of fiduciaries, trusts, commercial lending, insurance, trading in contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery, or other instruments traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market, board of trade, or foreign equivalent, or other financial activities, or (C) membership organization a function of which is to regulate participation of its members in activities listed above.

(53)(A) The term "small business related security" means a security that meets standards of credit-worthiness as established by the Commission, and either—

(i) represents an interest in 1 or more promissory notes or leases of personal property evidencing the obligation of a small business concern and originated by an insured depository institution, insured credit union, insurance company, or similar institution which is supervised and examined by a Federal or State authority, or a finance company or leasing company; or

(ii) is secured by an interest in 1 or more promissory notes or leases of personal property (with or without recourse to the issuer or lessee) and provides for payments of principal in relation to payments, or reasonable projections of payments, on notes or leases described in clause (i).

(B) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) an "interest in a promissory note or a lease of personal property" includes ownership rights, certificates of interest or participation in such notes or leases, and rights designed to assure servicing of such notes or leases, or the receipt or timely receipt of amounts payable under such notes or leases;

(ii) the term "small business concern" means a business that meets the criteria for a small business concern established by the Small Business Administration under section 3(a) of the Small Business Act;

(iii) the term "insured depository institution" has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act; and

(iv) the term "insured credit union" has the same meaning as in section 101 of the Federal Credit Union Act.

(54) QUALIFIED INVESTOR.—

(A) DEFINITION.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), for purposes of this title, the term "qualified investor" means—

(i) any investment company registered with the Commission under section 8 of the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(ii) any issuer eligible for an exclusion from the definition of investment company pursuant to section 3(c)(7) of the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(iii) any bank (as defined in paragraph (6) of this subsection), savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act), broker, dealer, insurance company (as defined in section 2(a)(13) of the Securities Act of 1933), or business development company (as defined in section 2(a)(48) of the Investment Company Act of 1940);

(iv) any small business investment company licensed by the United States Small Business Administration under section 301 (c) or (d) of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958;

(v) any State sponsored employee benefit plan, or any other employee benefit plan, within the meaning of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, other than an individual retirement account, if the investment decisions are made by a plan fiduciary, as defined in section 3(21) of that Act, which is either a bank, savings and loan association, insurance company, or registered investment adviser;

(vi) any trust whose purchases of securities are directed by a person described in clauses (i) through (v) of this subparagraph;

(vii) any market intermediary exempt under section 3(c)(2) of the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(viii) any associated person of a broker or dealer other than a natural person;

(ix) any foreign bank (as defined in section 1(b)(7) of the International Banking Act of 1978);

(x) the government of any foreign country;

(xi) any corporation, company, or partnership that owns and invests on a discretionary basis, not less than $25,000,000 in investments;

(xii) any natural person who owns and invests on a discretionary basis, not less than $25,000,000 in investments;

(xiii) any government or political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality of a government who owns and invests on a discretionary basis not less than $50,000,000 in investments; or

(xiv) any multinational or supranational entity or any agency or instrumentality thereof.

(B) ALTERED THRESHOLDS FOR ASSET-BACKED SECURITIES AND LOAN PARTICIPATIONS.—For purposes of section

3(a)(5)(C)(iii) of this title and section 206(a)(5) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, the term "qualified investor" has the meaning given such term by subparagraph (A) of this paragraph except that clauses (xi) and (xii) shall be applied by substituting "$10,000,000" for "$25,000,000".

(C) ADDITIONAL AUTHORITY.—The Commission may, by rule or order, define a "qualified investor" as any other person, taking into consideration such factors as the financial sophistication of the person, net worth, and knowledge and experience in financial matters.

(55)(A) The term "security future" means a contract of sale for future delivery of a single security or of a narrow-based security index, including any interest therein or based on the value thereof, except an exempted security under section 3(a)(12) of this title as in effect on the date of the enactment of the Futures Trading Act of 1982 (other than any municipal security as defined in section 3(a)(29) as in effect on the date of the enactment of the Futures Trading Act of 1982). The term "security future" does not include any agreement, contract, or transaction excluded from the Commodity Exchange Act under section 2(c), 2(d), 2(f), or 2(g) of the Commodity Exchange Act (as in effect on the date of the enactment of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000) or title IV of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000.

(B) The term "narrow-based security index" means an index—

(i) that has 9 or fewer component securities;

(ii) in which a component security comprises more than 30 percent of the index's weighting;

(iii) in which the five highest weighted component securities in the aggregate comprise more than 60 percent of the index's weighting; or

(iv) in which the lowest weighted component securities comprising, in the aggregate, 25 percent of the index's weighting have an aggregate dollar value of average daily trading volume of less than $50,000,000 (or in the case of an index with 15 or more component securities, $30,000,000), except that if there are two or more securities with equal weighting that could be included in the calculation of the lowest weighted component securities comprising, in the aggregate, 25 percent of the index's weighting, such securities shall be ranked from lowest to highest dollar value of average daily trading volume and shall be included in the calculation based on their ranking starting with the lowest ranked security.

(C) Notwithstanding subparagraph (B), an index is not a narrow-based security index if—

(i)(I) it has at least nine component securities;

(II) no component security comprises more than 30 percent of the index's weighting; and

(III) each component security is—

(aa) registered pursuant to section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934;

(bb) one of 750 securities with the largest market capitalization; and

(cc) one of 675 securities with the largest dollar value of average daily trading volume;

(ii) a board of trade was designated as a contract market by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission with respect to a contract of sale for future delivery on the index, before the date of the enactment of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000;

(iii)(I) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index traded on a designated contract market or registered derivatives transaction execution facility for at least 30 days as a contract of sale for future delivery on an index that was not a narrow-based security index; and

(II) it has been a narrow-based security index for no more than 45 business days over 3 consecutive calendar months;

(iv) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index is traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade and meets such requirements as are jointly established by rule or regulation by the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission;

(v) no more than 18 months have passed since the date of the enactment of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000 and—

(I) it is traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade;

(II) the offer and sale in the United States of a contract of sale for future delivery on the index was authorized before the date of the enactment of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000; and

(III) the conditions of such authorization continue to be met; or

(vi) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index is traded on or subject to the rules of a board of trade and meets such requirements as are jointly established by rule, regulation, or order by the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(D) Within 1 year after the enactment of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly shall adopt rules or regulations that set forth the requirements under clause (iv) of subparagraph (C).

(E) An index that is a narrow-based security index solely because it was a narrow-based security index for more than 45 business days over 3 consecutive calendar months pursuant to clause (iii) of subparagraph (C) shall not be a narrow-based security index for the 3 following calendar months.

(F) For purposes of subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph—

(i) the dollar value of average daily trading volume and the market capitalization shall be calculated as of the preceding 6 full calendar months; and

(ii) the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall, by rule or regulation, jointly specify the method to be used to determine market capitalization and dollar value of average daily trading volume.

(56) The term "security futures product" means a security future or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security future.

(57)(A) The term "margin", when used with respect to a security futures product, means the amount, type, and form of collateral required to secure any extension or maintenance of credit, or the amount, type, and form of collateral required as a performance bond related to the purchase, sale, or carrying of a security futures product.

(B) The terms "margin level" and "level of margin", when used with respect to a security futures product, mean the amount of margin required to secure any extension or maintenance of credit, or the amount of margin required as a performance bond related to the purchase, sale, or carrying of a security futures product.

(C) The terms "higher margin level" and "higher level of margin", when used with respect to a security futures product, mean a margin level established by a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 6(g) that is higher than the minimum amount established and in effect pursuant to section 7(c)(2)(B).

(58) AUDIT COMMITTEE.—The term "audit committee" means—

(A) a committee (or equivalent body) established by and amongst the board of directors of an issuer for the purpose of overseeing the accounting and financial reporting processes of the issuer and audits of the financial statements of the issuer; and

(B) if no such committee exists with respect to an issuer, the entire board of directors of the issuer.

(59) REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM.—The term "registered public accounting firm" has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.

(60) CREDIT RATING.—The term "credit rating" means an assessment of the creditworthiness of an obligor as an entity or with respect to specific securities or money market instruments.

(61) CREDIT RATING AGENCY.—The term "credit rating agency" means any person—

(A) engaged in the business of issuing credit ratings on the Internet or through another readily accessible means, for free or for a reasonable fee, but does not include a commercial credit reporting company;

(B) employing either a quantitative or qualitative model, or both, to determine credit ratings; and

(C) receiving fees from either issuers, investors, or other market participants, or a combination thereof.

(62) NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED STATISTICAL RATING ORGANIZATION.—The term "nationally recognized statistical rating organization" means a credit rating agency that—

(A) issues credit ratings certified by qualified institutional buyers, in accordance with section 15E(a)(1)(B)(ix), with respect to—

(i) financial institutions, brokers, or dealers;

(ii) insurance companies;

(iii) corporate issuers;

(iv) issuers of asset-backed securities (as that term is defined in section 1101(c) of part 229 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on the date of enactment of this paragraph);

(v) issuers of government securities, municipal securities, or securities issued by a foreign government; or

(vi) a combination of one or more categories of obligors described in any of clauses (i) through (v); and

(B) is registered under section 15E.

(63) PERSON ASSOCIATED WITH A NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED STATISTICAL RATING ORGANIZATION.—The term "person associated with" a nationally recognized statistical rating organization means any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or any employee of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

(64) QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER.—The term "qualified institutional buyer" has the meaning given such term in section 230.144A(a) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, or any successor thereto.

(79) ASSET-BACKED SECURITY.—The term "asset-backed security"—

(A) means a fixed-income or other security collateralized by any type of self-liquidating financial asset (including a loan, a lease, a mortgage, or a secured or unsecured receivable) that allows the holder of the security to receive payments that depend primarily on cash flow from the asset, including—

(i) a collateralized mortgage obligation;

(ii) a collateralized debt obligation;

(iii) a collateralized bond obligation;

(iv) a collateralized debt obligation of asset-backed securities;

(v) a collateralized debt obligation of collateralized debt obligations; and

(vi) a security that the Commission, by rule, determines to be an asset-backed security for purposes of this section; and

(B) does not include a security issued by a finance subsidiary held by the parent company or a company controlled by the parent company, if none of the securities issued by the finance subsidiary are held by an entity that is not controlled by the parent company.

(65) ELIGIBLE CONTRACT PARTICIPANT.—The term "eligible contract participant" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(66) MAJOR SWAP PARTICIPANT.—The term "major swap participant" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(67) MAJOR SECURITY-BASED SWAP PARTICIPANT.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "major security-based swap participant" means any person—

(i) who is not a security-based swap dealer; and

(ii)(I) who maintains a substantial position in security-based swaps for any of the major security-based swap categories, as such categories are determined by the Commission, excluding both positions held for hedging or mitigating commercial risk and positions maintained by any employee benefit plan (or any contract held by such a plan) as defined in paragraphs (3) and (32) of section 3 of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1002) for the primary purpose of hedging or mitigating any risk directly associated with the operation of the plan;

(II) whose outstanding security-based swaps create substantial counterparty exposure that could have serious adverse effects on the financial stability of the United States banking system or financial markets; or

(III) that is a financial entity that—

(aa) is highly leveraged relative to the amount of capital such entity holds and that is not subject to capital requirements established by an appropriate Federal banking agency; and

(bb) maintains a substantial position in outstanding security-based swaps in any major security-based swap category, as such categories are determined by the Commission.

(B) DEFINITION OF SUBSTANTIAL POSITION.—For purposes of subparagraph (A), the Commission shall define, by rule or regulation, the term "substantial position" at the threshold that the Commission determines to be prudent for the effective monitoring, management, and oversight of entities that are systemically important or can significantly impact the financial system of the United States. In setting the definition under this subparagraph, the Commission shall consider the person's relative position in uncleared as opposed to cleared security-based swaps and may take into consideration the value and quality of collateral held against counterparty exposures.

(C) SCOPE OF DESIGNATION.—For purposes of subparagraph (A), a person may be designated as a major security-based swap participant for 1 or more categories of security-based swaps without being classified as a major security-based swap participant for all classes of security-based swaps.

(68) SECURITY-BASED SWAP.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), the term "security-based swap" means any agreement, contract, or transaction that—

(i) is a swap, as that term is defined under section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (without regard to paragraph (47)(B)(x) of such section); and

(ii) is based on—

(I) an index that is a narrow-based security index, including any interest therein or on the value thereof;

(II) a single security or loan, including any interest therein or on the value thereof; or

(III) the occurrence, nonoccurrence, or extent of the occurrence of an event relating to a single issuer of a security or the issuers of securities in a narrow-based security index, provided that such event directly affects the financial statements, financial condition, or financial obligations of the issuer.

(B) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION REGARDING MASTER AGREEMENTS.—The term "security-based swap" shall be construed to include a master agreement that provides for an agreement, contract, or transaction that is a security-based swap pursuant to subparagraph (A), together with all supplements to any such master agreement, without regard to whether the master agreement contains an agreement, contract, or transaction that is not a security-based swap pursuant to subparagraph (A), except that the master agreement shall be considered to be a security-based swap only with respect to each agreement, contract, or transaction under the master agreement that is a security-based swap pursuant to subparagraph (A).

(C) EXCLUSIONS.—The term "security-based swap" does not include any agreement, contract, or transaction that meets the definition of a security-based swap only because such agreement, contract, or transaction references, is based upon, or settles through the transfer, delivery, or receipt of an exempted security under paragraph (12), as in effect on the date of enactment of the Futures Trading Act of 1982 (other than any municipal security as defined in paragraph (29) as in effect on the date of enactment of the Futures Trading Act of 1982), unless such agreement, contract, or transaction is of the character of, or is commonly known in the trade as, a put, call, or other option.

(D) MIXED SWAP.—The term "security-based swap" includes any agreement, contract, or transaction that is as described in subparagraph (A) and also is based on the value of 1 or more interest or other rates, currencies, commodities, instruments of indebtedness, indices, quantitative measures, other financial or economic interest or property of any kind (other than a single security or a narrow-based security index), or the occurrence, non-occurrence, or the extent of the occurrence of an event or contingency associated with a potential financial, economic, or commercial consequence (other than an event described in subparagraph (A)(ii)(III)).

(E) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION REGARDING USE OF THE TERM INDEX.—The term "index" means an index or group of securities, including any interest therein or based on the value thereof.

(69) SWAP.—The term "swap" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(70) PERSON ASSOCIATED WITH A SECURITY-BASED SWAP DEALER OR MAJOR SECURITY-BASED SWAP PARTICIPANT.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "person associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant" or "associated person of a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant" means—

(i) any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions);

(ii) any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant; or

(iii) any employee of such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant.

(B) EXCLUSION.—Other than for purposes of section 15F(l)(2), the term "person associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant" or "associated person of a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant" does not include any person associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant whose functions are solely clerical or ministerial.

(71) SECURITY-BASED SWAP DEALER.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term "security-based swap dealer" means any person who—

(i) holds themself out as a dealer in security-based swaps;

(ii) makes a market in security-based swaps;

(iii) regularly enters into security-based swaps with counterparties as an ordinary course of business for its own account; or

(iv) engages in any activity causing it to be commonly known in the trade as a dealer or market maker in security-based swaps.

(B) DESIGNATION BY TYPE OR CLASS.—A person may be designated as a security-based swap dealer for a single type or single class or category of security-based swap or activities and considered not to be a security-based swap dealer for other types, classes, or categories of security-based swaps or activities.

(C) EXCEPTION.—The term "security-based swap dealer" does not include a person that enters into security-based swaps for such person's own account, either individually or in a fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of regular business.

(D) DE MINIMIS EXCEPTION.—The Commission shall exempt from designation as a security-based swap dealer an entity that engages in a de minimis quantity of security-based swap dealing in connection with transactions with or on behalf of its customers. The Commission shall promulgate regulations to establish factors with respect to the making of any determination to exempt.

(72) APPROPRIATE FEDERAL BANKING AGENCY.—The term "appropriate Federal banking agency" has the same meaning as in section 3(q) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(q)).

(73) BOARD.—The term "Board" means the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

(74) PRUDENTIAL REGULATOR.—The term "prudential regulator" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(75) SECURITY-BASED SWAP DATA REPOSITORY.—The term "security-based swap data repository" means any person that collects and maintains information or records with respect to transactions or positions in, or the terms and conditions of, security-based swaps entered into by third parties for the purpose of providing a centralized recordkeeping facility for security-based swaps.

(76) SWAP DEALER.—The term "swap dealer" has the same meaning as in section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1a).

(77) SECURITY-BASED SWAP EXECUTION FACILITY.—The term "security-based swap execution facility" means a trading system or platform in which multiple participants have the ability to execute or trade security-based swaps by accepting bids and offers made by multiple participants in the facility or system, through any means of interstate commerce, including any trading facility, that—

(A) facilitates the execution of security-based swaps between persons; and

(B) is not a national securities exchange.

(78) SECURITY-BASED SWAP AGREEMENT.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of sections 9, 10, 16, 20, and 21A of this Act, and section 17 of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77q), the term "security-based swap agreement" means a swap agreement as defined in section 206A of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (15 U.S.C. 78c note) of which a material term is based on the price, yield, value, or volatility of any security or any group or index of securities, or any interest therein.

(B) EXCLUSIONS.—The term "security-based swap agreement" does not include any security-based swap.

(80) EMERGING GROWTH COMPANY.—The term "emerging growth company" means an issuer that had total annual gross revenues of less than **[**$1,000,000,000**]** *$1,500,000,000* (as such amount is indexed for inflation every 5 years by the Commission to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, setting the threshold to the nearest 1,000,000) during its most recently completed fiscal year. An issuer that is an emerging growth company as of the first day of that fiscal year shall continue to be deemed an emerging growth company until the earliest of—

(A) the last day of the fiscal year of the issuer during which it had total annual gross revenues of **[**$1,000,000,000**]** *$1,500,000,000* (as such amount is indexed for inflation every 5 years by the Commission to re-

flect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, setting the threshold to the nearest 1,000,000) or more;

(B) the last day of the fiscal year of the issuer following the [fifth] *7-year* anniversary of the date of the first sale of common equity securities of the issuer pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933; *or*

(C) the date on which such issuer has, during the previous 3-year period, issued more than [$1,000,000,000] *$1,500,000,000* in non-convertible debt[; or].

[(D) the date on which such issuer is deemed to be a "large accelerated filer", as defined in section 240.12b–2 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, or any successor thereto.]

[(80)] *(81)* FUNDING PORTAL.—The term "funding portal" means any person acting as an intermediary in a transaction involving the offer or sale of securities for the account of others, solely pursuant to section 4(6) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77d(6)), that does not—

(A) offer investment advice or recommendations *(other than by providing impersonal investment advice by means of written material, or an oral statement, that does not purport to meet the objectives or needs of a specific individual or account)*;

(B) solicit purchases, sales, or offers to buy the securities offered or displayed on its website or portal;

(C) compensate employees, agents, or other persons for such solicitation or based on the sale of securities displayed or referenced on its website or portal;

(D) hold, manage, possess, or otherwise handle investor funds or securities; or

(E) engage in such other activities as the Commission, by rule, determines appropriate.

(b) The Commission and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, as to matters within their respective jurisdictions, shall have power by rules and regulations to define technical, trade, accounting, and other terms used in this title, consistently with the provisions and purposes of this title.

(c) No provision of this title shall apply to, or be deemed to include, any executive department or independent establishment of the United States, or any lending agency which is wholly owned, directly or indirectly, by the United States, or any officer, agent, or employee of any such department, establishment, or agency, acting in the course of his official duty as such, unless such provision makes specific reference to such department, establishment, or agency.

(d) No issuer of municipal securities or officer or employee thereof acting in the course of his official duties as such shall be deemed to be a "broker", "dealer", or "municipal securities dealer" solely by reason of buying, selling, or effecting transactions in the issuer's securities.

(e) CHARITABLE ORGANIZATIONS.—

(1) EXEMPTION.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this title, but subject to paragraph (2) of this subsection, a charitable organization, as defined in section 3(c)(10)(D) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, or any trustee, director, officer, employee, or volunteer of such a charitable organization acting within the scope of such person's employment or duties with such organization, shall not be deemed to be a "broker", "dealer", "municipal securities broker", "municipal securities dealer", "government securities broker", or "government securities dealer" for purposes of this title solely because such organization or person buys, holds, sells, or trades in securities for its own account in its capacity as trustee or administrator of, or otherwise on behalf of or for the account of—

(A) such a charitable organization;

(B) a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940; or

(C) a trust or other donative instrument described in section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, or the settlors (or potential settlors) or beneficiaries of any such trust or other instrument.

(2) LIMITATION ON COMPENSATION.—The exemption provided under paragraph (1) shall not be available to any charitable organization, or any trustee, director, officer, employee, or volunteer of such a charitable organization, unless each person who, on or after 90 days after the date of enactment of this subsection, solicits donations on behalf of such charitable organization from any donor to a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, is either a volunteer or is engaged in the overall fund raising activities of a charitable organization and receives no commission or other special compensation based on the number or the value of donations collected for the fund.

(f) CONSIDERATION OF PROMOTION OF EFFICIENCY, COMPETITION, AND CAPITAL FORMATION.—Whenever pursuant to this title the Commission is engaged in rulemaking, or in the review of a rule of a self-regulatory organization, and is required to consider or determine whether an action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, the Commission shall also consider, in addition to the protection of investors, whether the action will promote efficiency, competition, and capital formation.

(g) CHURCH PLANS.—No church plan described in section 414(e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, no person or entity eligible to establish and maintain such a plan under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, no company or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, and no trustee, director, officer or employee of or volunteer for such plan, company, account, person, or entity, acting within the scope of that person's employment or activities with respect to such plan, shall be deemed to be a "broker", "dealer", "municipal securities broker", "municipal securities dealer", "government securities broker", "government securities dealer", "clearing agency", or "transfer agent" for purposes of this title—

(1) solely because such plan, company, person, or entity buys, holds, sells, trades in, or transfers securities or acts as an intermediary in making payments in connection with transactions in securities for its own account in its capacity as trustee or administrator of, or otherwise on behalf of, or for the account of, any church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940; and

(2) if no such person or entity receives a commission or other transaction-related sales compensation in connection with any activities conducted in reliance on the exemption provided by this subsection.

(h) LIMITED EXEMPTION FOR FUNDING PORTALS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Commission shall, by rule, exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, a registered funding portal from the requirement to register as a broker or dealer under section 15(a)(1), provided that such funding portal—

(A) remains subject to the examination, enforcement, and other rulemaking authority of the Commission;

(B) is a member of a national securities association registered under section 15A; and

(C) is subject to such other requirements under this title as the Commission determines appropriate under such rule.

(2) NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATION MEMBERSHIP.—For purposes of sections 15(b)(8) and 15A, the term "broker or dealer" includes a funding portal and the term "registered broker or dealer" includes a registered funding portal, except to the extent that the Commission, by rule, determines otherwise, provided that a national securities association shall only examine for and enforce against a registered funding portal rules of such national securities association written specifically for registered funding portals.

* * * * * * *

SEC. 10A. AUDIT REQUIREMENTS.

(a) IN GENERAL.—Each audit required pursuant to this title of the financial statements of an issuer by a registered public accounting firm shall include, in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, as may be modified or supplemented from time to time by the Commission—

(1) procedures designed to provide reasonable assurance of detecting illegal acts that would have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts;

(2) procedures designed to identify related party transactions that are material to the financial statements or otherwise require disclosure therein; and

(3) an evaluation of whether there is substantial doubt about the ability of the issuer to continue as a going concern during the ensuing fiscal year.

(b) REQUIRED RESPONSE TO AUDIT DISCOVERIES.—

(1) INVESTIGATION AND REPORT TO MANAGEMENT.—If, in the course of conducting an audit pursuant to this title to which subsection (a) applies, the registered public accounting firm detects or otherwise becomes aware of information indicating

that an illegal act (whether or not perceived to have a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer) has or may have occurred, the firm shall, in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, as may be modified or supplemented from time to time by the Commission—

(A)(i) determine whether it is likely that an illegal act has occurred; and

(ii) if so, determine and consider the possible effect of the illegal act on the financial statements of the issuer, including any contingent monetary effects, such as fines, penalties, and damages; and

(B) as soon as practicable, inform the appropriate level of the management of the issuer and assure that the audit committee of the issuer, or the board of directors of the issuer in the absence of such a committee, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that have been detected or have otherwise come to the attention of such firm in the course of the audit, unless the illegal act is clearly inconsequential.

(2) RESPONSE TO FAILURE TO TAKE REMEDIAL ACTION.—If, after determining that the audit committee of the board of directors of the issuer, or the board of directors of the issuer in the absence of an audit committee, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that have been detected or have otherwise come to the attention of the firm in the course of the audit of such accountant, the registered public accounting firm concludes that—

(A) the illegal act has a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer;

(B) the senior management has not taken, and the board of directors has not caused senior management to take, timely and appropriate remedial actions with respect to the illegal act; and

(C) the failure to take remedial action is reasonably expected to warrant departure from a standard report of the auditor, when made, or warrant resignation from the audit engagement;

the registered public accounting firm shall, as soon as practicable, directly report its conclusions to the board of directors.

(3) NOTICE TO COMMISSION; RESPONSE TO FAILURE TO NOTIFY.—An issuer whose board of directors receives a report under paragraph (2) shall inform the Commission by notice not later than 1 business day after the receipt of such report and shall furnish the registered public accounting firm making such report with a copy of the notice furnished to the Commission. If the registered public accounting firm fails to receive a copy of the notice before the expiration of the required 1-business-day period, the registered public accounting firm shall—

(A) resign from the engagement; or

(B) furnish to the Commission a copy of its report (or the documentation of any oral report given) not later than 1 business day following such failure to receive notice.

(4) REPORT AFTER RESIGNATION.—If a registered public accounting firm resigns from an engagement under paragraph (3)(A), the firm shall, not later than 1 business day following

the failure by the issuer to notify the Commission under paragraph (3), furnish to the Commission a copy of the report of the firm (or the documentation of any oral report given).

(c) AUDITOR LIABILITY LIMITATION.—No registered public accounting firm shall be liable in a private action for any finding, conclusion, or statement expressed in a report made pursuant to paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (b), including any rule promulgated pursuant thereto.

(d) CIVIL PENALTIES IN CEASE-AND-DESIST PROCEEDINGS.—If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing in a proceeding instituted pursuant to section 21C, that a registered public accounting firm has willfully violated paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (b), the Commission may, in addition to entering an order under section 21C, impose a civil penalty against the registered public accounting firm and any other person that the Commission finds was a cause of such violation. The determination to impose a civil penalty and the amount of the penalty shall be governed by the standards set forth in section 21B.

(e) PRESERVATION OF EXISTING AUTHORITY.—Except as provided in subsection (d), nothing in this section shall be held to limit or otherwise affect the authority of the Commission under this title.

(f) DEFINITIONS.—As used in this section, the term "illegal act" means an act or omission that violates any law, or any rule or regulation having the force of law. As used in this section, the term "issuer" means an issuer (as defined in section 3), the securities of which are registered under section 12, or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 15(d), or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), and that it has not withdrawn.

(g) PROHIBITED ACTIVITIES.—Except as provided in subsection (h), it shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm (and any associated person of that firm, to the extent determined appropriate by the Commission) that performs for any issuer any audit required by this title or the rules of the Commission under this title or, beginning 180 days after the date of commencement of the operations of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board established under section 101 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (in this section referred to as the "Board"), the rules of the Board, to provide to that issuer, contemporaneously with the audit, any non-audit service, including—

(1) bookkeeping or other services related to the accounting records or financial statements of the audit client;

(2) financial information systems design and implementation;

(3) appraisal or valuation services, fairness opinions, or contribution-in-kind reports;

(4) actuarial services;

(5) internal audit outsourcing services;

(6) management functions or human resources;

(7) broker or dealer, investment adviser, or investment banking services;

(8) legal services and expert services unrelated to the audit; and

(9) any other service that the Board determines, by regulation, is impermissible.

(h) PREAPPROVAL REQUIRED FOR NON-AUDIT SERVICES.—A registered public accounting firm may engage in any non-audit service, including tax services, that is not described in any of paragraphs (1) through (9) of subsection (g) for an audit client, only if the activity is approved in advance by the audit committee of the issuer, in accordance with subsection (i).

(i) PREAPPROVAL REQUIREMENTS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—

(A) AUDIT COMMITTEE ACTION.—All auditing services (which may entail providing comfort letters in connection with securities underwritings or statutory audits required for insurance companies for purposes of State law) and non-audit services, other than as provided in subparagraph (B), provided to an issuer by the auditor of the issuer shall be preapproved by the audit committee of the issuer.

(B) DE MINIMIS EXCEPTION.—The preapproval requirement under subparagraph (A) is waived with respect to the provision of non-audit services for an issuer, if—

(i) the aggregate amount of all such non-audit services provided to the issuer constitutes not more than 5 percent of the total amount of revenues paid by the issuer to its auditor during the fiscal year in which the non-audit services are provided;

(ii) such services were not recognized by the issuer at the time of the engagement to be non-audit services; and

(iii) such services are promptly brought to the attention of the audit committee of the issuer and approved prior to the completion of the audit by the audit committee or by 1 or more members of the audit committee who are members of the board of directors to whom authority to grant such approvals has been delegated by the audit committee.

(2) DISCLOSURE TO INVESTORS.—Approval by an audit committee of an issuer under this subsection of a non-audit service to be performed by the auditor of the issuer shall be disclosed to investors in periodic reports required by section 13(a).

(3) DELEGATION AUTHORITY.—The audit committee of an issuer may delegate to 1 or more designated members of the audit committee who are independent directors of the board of directors, the authority to grant preapprovals required by this subsection. The decisions of any member to whom authority is delegated under this paragraph to preapprove an activity under this subsection shall be presented to the full audit committee at each of its scheduled meetings.

(4) APPROVAL OF AUDIT SERVICES FOR OTHER PURPOSES.—In carrying out its duties under subsection (m)(2), if the audit committee of an issuer approves an audit service within the scope of the engagement of the auditor, such audit service shall be deemed to have been preapproved for purposes of this subsection.

(j) AUDIT PARTNER ROTATION.—It shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm to provide audit services to an issuer if the lead (or coordinating) audit partner (having primary respon-

sibility for the audit), or the audit partner responsible for reviewing the audit, has performed audit services for that issuer in each of the 5 previous fiscal years of that issuer.

(k) REPORTS TO AUDIT COMMITTEES.—Each registered public accounting firm that performs for any issuer any audit required by this title shall timely report to the audit committee of the issuer—

(1) all critical accounting policies and practices to be used;

(2) all alternative treatments of financial information within generally accepted accounting principles that have been discussed with management officials of the issuer, ramifications of the use of such alternative disclosures and treatments, and the treatment preferred by the registered public accounting firm; and

(3) other material written communications between the registered public accounting firm and the management of the issuer, such as any management letter or schedule of unadjusted differences.

(l) CONFLICTS OF INTEREST.—It shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm to perform for an issuer any audit service required by this title, if a chief executive officer, controller, chief financial officer, chief accounting officer, or any person serving in an equivalent position for the issuer, was employed by that registered independent public accounting firm and participated in any capacity in the audit of that issuer during the 1-year period preceding the date of the initiation of the audit.

(m) STANDARDS RELATING TO AUDIT COMMITTEES.—

(1) COMMISSION RULES.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Effective not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Commission shall, by rule, direct the national securities exchanges and national securities associations to prohibit the listing of any security of an issuer that is not in compliance with the requirements of any portion of paragraphs (2) through (6).

(B) OPPORTUNITY TO CURE DEFECTS.—The rules of the Commission under subparagraph (A) shall provide for appropriate procedures for an issuer to have an opportunity to cure any defects that would be the basis for a prohibition under subparagraph (A), before the imposition of such prohibition.

(2) RESPONSIBILITIES RELATING TO REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRMS.—The audit committee of each issuer, in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, shall be directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, and oversight of the work of any registered public accounting firm employed by that issuer (including resolution of disagreements between management and the auditor regarding financial reporting) for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or related work, and each such registered public accounting firm shall report directly to the audit committee.

(3) INDEPENDENCE.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Each member of the audit committee of the issuer shall be a member of the board of directors of the issuer, and shall otherwise be independent.

(B) CRITERIA.—In order to be considered to be independent for purposes of this paragraph, a member of an

audit committee of an issuer may not, other than in his or her capacity as a member of the audit committee, the board of directors, or any other board committee—

(i) accept any consulting, advisory, or other compensatory fee from the issuer; or

(ii) be an affiliated person of the issuer or any subsidiary thereof.

(C) EXEMPTION AUTHORITY.—The Commission may exempt from the requirements of subparagraph (B) a particular relationship with respect to audit committee members, as the Commission determines appropriate in light of the circumstances.

(4) COMPLAINTS.—Each audit committee shall establish procedures for—

(A) the receipt, retention, and treatment of complaints received by the issuer regarding accounting, internal accounting controls, or auditing matters; and

(B) the confidential, anonymous submission by employees of the issuer of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters.

(5) AUTHORITY TO ENGAGE ADVISERS.—Each audit committee shall have the authority to engage independent counsel and other advisers, as it determines necessary to carry out its duties.

(6) FUNDING.—Each issuer shall provide for appropriate funding, as determined by the audit committee, in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, for payment of compensation—

(A) to the registered public accounting firm employed by the issuer for the purpose of rendering or issuing an audit report; and

(B) to any advisers employed by the audit committee under paragraph (5).

(n) AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE FOR CERTAIN PAST AUDITS OCCURRING BEFORE AN ISSUER IS A PUBLIC COMPANY.—With respect to an issuer that is a public company or an issuer that has filed a registration statement to become a public company, the auditor independence rules established by the Commission under the securities laws with respect to audits occurring before the last fiscal year of the issuer completed before the issuer filed a registration statement to become a public company shall treat an auditor as independent if—

(1) the auditor is independent under standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants applicable to certified public accountants in United States; or

(2) with respect to a foreign issuer, the auditor is independent under comparable standards applicable to certified public accountants in the issuer's home country.

* * * * * * *

REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SECURITIES

SEC. 12. (a) It shall be unlawful for any member, broker, or dealer to effect any transaction in any security (other than an exempted security) on a national securities exchange unless a registration

is effective as to such security for such exchange in accordance with the provisions of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder. The provisions of this subsection shall not apply in respect of a security futures product traded on a national securities exchange.

(b) A security may be registered on a national securities exchange by the issuer filing an application with the exchange (and filing with the Commission such duplicate originals thereof as the Commission may require), which application shall contain—

(1) Such information, in such detail, as to the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer, and any guarantor of the security as to principal or interest or both, as the Commission may by rules and regulations require, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, in respect of the following:

(A) the organization, financial structures, and nature of the business;

(B) the terms, position, rights, and privileges of the different classes of securities outstanding;

(C) the terms on which their securities are to be, and during the preceding three years have been, offered to the public or otherwise;

(D) the directors, officers, and underwriters, and each security holder of record holding more than 10 per centum of any class of any equity security of the issuer (other than an exempted security), their remuneration and their interests in the securities of, and their material contracts with, the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer;

(E) remuneration to others than directors and officers exceeding $20,000 per annum;

(F) bonus and profit-sharing arrangements;

(G) management and service contracts;

(H) options existing or to be created in respect of their securities;

(I) material contracts, not made in the ordinary course of business, which are to be executed in whole or in part at or after the filing of the application or which were made not more than two years before such filing, and every material patent or contract for a material patent right shall be deemed a material contract;

(J) balance sheets for not more than the three preceding fiscal years, certified if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission by a registered public accounting firm;

(K) profit and loss statements for not more than the three preceding fiscal years, certified if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission by a registered public accounting firm; and

(L) any further financial statements which the Commission may deem necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors.

(2) Such copies of articles of incorporation, bylaws, trust indentures, or corresponding documents by whatever name known, underwriting arrangements, and other similar documents of, and voting trust agreements with respect to, the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer as the Commission may require as necessary or appropriate for the proper protection of investors and to insure fair dealing in the security.

(3) Such copies of material contracts, referred to in paragraph (1)(I) above, as the Commission may require as necessary or appropriate for the proper protection of investors and to insure fair dealing in the security.

(c) If in the judgment of the Commission any information required under subsection (b) of this section is inapplicable to any specified class or classes of issuers, the Commission shall require in lieu thereof the submission of such other information of comparable character as it may deem applicable to such class of issuers.

(d) If the exchange authorities certify to the Commission that the security has been approved by the exchange for listing and registration, the registration shall become effective thirty days after the receipt of such certification by the Commission or within such shorter period of time as the Commission may determine. A security registered with a national securities exchange may be withdrawn or stricken from listing and registration in accordance with the rules of the exchange and, upon such terms as the Commission may deem necessary to impose for the protection of investors, upon application by the issuer or the exchange to the Commission; whereupon the issuer shall be relieved from further compliance with the provisions of this section and section 13 of this title and any rules or regulations under such sections as to the securities so withdrawn or stricken. An unissued security may be registered only in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(e) Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this section, the Commission may by such rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors permit securities listed on any exchange at the time the registration of such exchange as a national securities exchange becomes effective, to be registered for a period ending not later than July 1, 1935, without complying with the provisions of this section.

(f)(1)(A) Notwithstanding the preceding subsections of this section, any national securities exchange, in accordance with the requirements of this subsection and the rules hereunder, may extend unlisted trading privileges to—

(i) any security that is listed and registered on a national securities exchange, subject to subparagraph (B); and

(ii) any security that is otherwise registered pursuant to this section, or that would be required to be so registered except for the exemption from registration provided in subparagraph (B) or (G) of subsection (g)(2), subject to subparagraph (E) of this paragraph.

(B) A national securities exchange may not extend unlisted trading privileges to a security described in subparagraph (A)(i) during such interval, if any, after the commencement of an initial public offering of such security, as is or may be required pursuant to subparagraph (C).

(C) Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of the Unlisted Trading Privileges Act of 1994, the Commission shall prescribe, by rule or regulation, the duration of the interval referred to in subparagraph (B), if any, as the Commission determines to be necessary or appropriate for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this title. Until the earlier of the effective date of such rule or regulation or 240 days after such date of enactment, such interval shall begin at the opening of trading on the day on which such security commences trading on the national securities exchange with which such security is registered and end at the conclusion of the next day of trading.

(D) The Commission may prescribe, by rule or regulation such additional procedures or requirements for extending unlisted trading privileges to any security as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this title.

(E) No extension of unlisted trading privileges to securities described in subparagraph (A)(ii) may occur except pursuant to a rule, regulation, or order of the Commission approving such extension or extensions. In promulgating such rule or regulation or in issuing such order, the Commission—

(i) shall find that such extension or extensions of unlisted trading privileges is consistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, and otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this title;

(ii) shall take account of the public trading activity in such securities, the character of such trading, the impact of such extension on the existing markets for such securities, and the desirability of removing impediments to and the progress that has been made toward the development of a national market system; and

(iii) shall not permit a national securities exchange to extend unlisted trading privileges to such securities if any rule of such national securities exchange would unreasonably impair the ability of a dealer to solicit or effect transactions in such securities for its own account, or would unreasonably restrict competition among dealers in such securities or between such dealers acting in the capacity of market makers who are specialists and such dealers who are not specialists.

(F) An exchange may continue to extend unlisted trading privileges in accordance with this paragraph only if the exchange and the subject security continue to satisfy the requirements for eligibility under this paragraph, including any rules and regulations issued by the Commission pursuant to this paragraph, except that unlisted trading privileges may continue with regard to securities which had been admitted on such exchange prior to July 1, 1964, notwithstanding the failure to satisfy such requirements. If un-

listed trading privileges in a security are discontinued pursuant to this subparagraph, the exchange shall cease trading in that security, unless the exchange and the subject security thereafter satisfy the requirements of this paragraph and the rules issued hereunder.

(G) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) a security is the subject of an initial public offering if—

(I) the offering of the subject security is registered under the Securities Act of 1933; and

(II) the issuer of the security, immediately prior to filing the registration statement with respect to the offering, was not subject to the reporting requirements of section 13 or 15(d) of this title; and

(ii) an initial public offering of such security commences at the opening of trading on the day on which such security commences trading on the national securities exchange with which such security is registered.

(2)(A) At any time within 60 days of commencement of trading on an exchange of a security pursuant to unlisted trading privileges, the Commission may summarily suspend such unlisted trading privileges on the exchange. Such suspension shall not be reviewable under section 25 of this title and shall not be deemed to be a final agency action for purposes of section 704 of title 5, United States Code. Upon such suspension—

(i) the exchange shall cease trading in the security by the close of business on the date of such suspension, or at such time as the Commission may prescribe by rule or order for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this title; and

(ii) if the exchange seeks to extend unlisted trading privileges to the security, the exchange shall file an application to reinstate its ability to do so with the Commission pursuant to such procedures as the Commission may prescribe by rule or order for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this title.

(B) A suspension under subparagraph (A) shall remain in effect until the Commission, by order, grants approval of an application to reinstate, as described in subparagraph (A)(ii).

(C) A suspension under subparagraph (A) shall not affect the validity or force of an extension of unlisted trading privileges in effect prior to such suspension.

(D) The Commission shall not approve an application by a national securities exchange to reinstate its ability to extend unlisted trading privileges to a security unless the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the extension of unlisted trading privileges pursuant to such application is consistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, and otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this title. If the application is made to reinstate unlisted trading privileges to a security described in paragraph (1)(A)(ii), the Commission—

(i) shall take account of the public trading activity in such security, the character of such trading, the impact of such extension on the existing markets for such a security, and the de-

sirability of removing impediments to and the progress that has been made toward the development of a national market system; and

(ii) shall not grant any such application if any rule of the national securities exchange making application under this subsection would unreasonably impair the ability of a dealer to solicit or effect transactions in such security for its own account, or would unreasonably restrict competition among dealers in such security or between such dealers acting in the capacity of marketmakers who are specialists and such dealers who are not specialists.

(3) Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the Commission shall by rules and regulations suspend unlisted trading privileges in whole or in part for any or all classes of securities for a period not exceeding twelve months, if it deems such suspension necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors or to prevent evasion of the purposes of this title.

(4) On the application of the issuer of any security for which unlisted trading privileges on any exchange have been continued or extended pursuant to this subsection, or of any broker or dealer who makes or creates a market for such security, or of any other person having a bona fide interest in the question of termination or suspension of such unlisted trading privileges, or on its own motion, the Commission shall by order terminate, or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, such unlisted trading privileges for such security if the Commission finds, after appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing, that such termination or suspension is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(5) In any proceeding under this subsection in which appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing are required, notice of not less than ten days to the applicant in such proceeding, to the issuer of the security involved, to the exchange which is seeking to continue or extend or has continued or extended unlisted trading privileges for such security, and to the exchange, if any, on which such security is listed and registered, shall be deemed adequate notice, and any broker or dealer who makes or creates a market for such security, and any other person having a bona fide interest in such proceeding, shall upon application be entitled to be heard.

(6) Any security for which unlisted trading privileges are continued or extended pursuant to this subsection shall be deemed to be registered on a national securities exchange within the meaning of this title. The powers and duties of the Commission under this title shall be applicable to the rules of an exchange in respect to any such security. The Commission may, by such rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions, or for stated periods, exempt such securities from the operation of any provision of section 13, 14, or 16 of this title.

(g)(1) Every issuer which is engaged in interstate commerce, or in a business affecting interstate commerce, or whose securities are traded by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce shall—

(A) within 120 days after the last day of its first fiscal year ended on which the issuer has total assets exceeding $10,000,000 and a class of equity security (other than an exempted security) held of record by either—

(i) 2,000 persons *(that are not a qualified institutional buyer or an institutional accredited investor)*, or

(ii) 500 persons who are not accredited investors (as such term is defined by the Commission), and

(B) in the case of an issuer that is a bank, a savings and loan holding company (as defined in section 10 of the Home Owners' Loan Act), or a bank holding company, as such term is defined in section 2 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1841), not later than 120 days after the last day of its first fiscal year ended after the effective date of this subsection, on which the issuer has total assets exceeding $10,000,000 and a class of equity security (other than an exempted security) held of record by 2,000 or more persons *(that are not a qualified institutional buyer or an institutional accredited investor)*,

register such security by filing with the Commission a registration statement (and such copies thereof as the Commission may require) with respect to such security containing such information and documents as the Commission may specify comparable to that which is required in an application to register a security pursuant to subsection (b) of this section. Each such registration statement shall become effective sixty days after filing with the Commission or within such shorter period as the Commission may direct. Until such registration statement becomes effective it shall not be deemed filed for the purposes of section 18 of this title. Any issuer may register any class of equity security not required to be registered by filing a registration statement pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph. The Commission is authorized to extend the date upon which any issuer or class of issuers is required to register a security pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph.

(2) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply in respect of—

(A) any security listed and registered on a national securities exchange.

(B) any security issued by an investment company registered pursuant to section 8 of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(C) any security, other than permanent stock, guaranty stock, permanent reserve stock, or any similar certificate evidencing nonwithdrawable capital, issued by a savings and loan association, building and loan association, cooperative bank, homestead association, or similar institution, which is supervised and examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over any such institution.

(D) any security of an issuer organized and operated exclusively for religious, educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, or reformatory purposes and not for pecuniary profit, and no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual; or any security of a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(E) any security of an issuer which is a "cooperative association" as defined in the Agricultural Marketing Act, approved June 15, 1929, as amended, or a federation of such cooperative associations, if such federation possesses no greater powers or purposes than cooperative associations so defined.

(F) any security issued by a mutual or cooperative organization which supplies a commodity or service primarily for the benefit of its members and operates not for pecuniary profit, but only if the security is part of a class issuable only to persons who purchase commodities or services from the issuer, the security is transferable only to a successor in interest or occupancy of premises serviced or to be served by the issuer, and no dividends are payable to the holder of the security.

(G) any security issued by an insurance company if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) Such insurance company is required to and does file an annual statement with the Commissioner of Insurance (or other officer or agency performing a similar function) of its domiciliary State, and such annual statement conforms to that prescribed by the National Association of Insurance Commissioners or in the determination of such State commissioner, officer or agency substantially conforms to that so prescribed.

(ii) Such insurance company is subject to regulation by its domiciliary State of proxies, consents, or authorizations in respect of securities issued by such company and such regulation conforms to that prescribed by the National Association of Insurance Commissioners.

(iii) After July 1, 1966, the purchase and sales of securities issued by such insurance company by beneficial owners, directors, or officers of such company are subject to regulation (including reporting) by its domiciliary State substantially in the manner provided in section 16 of this title.

(H) any interest or participation in any collective trust funds maintained by a bank or in a separate account maintained by an insurance company which interest or participation is issued in connection with (i) a stock-bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plan which meets the requirements for qualification under section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954, (ii) an annuity plan which meets the requirements for deduction of the employer's contribution under section 404(a)(2) of such Code, or (iii) a church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

(3) The Commission may by rules or regulations or, on its own motion, after notice and opportunity for hearing, by order, exempt from this subsection any security of a foreign issuer, including any certificate of deposit for such a security, if the Commission finds that such exemption is in the public interest and is consistent with the protection of investors.

(4) Registration of any class of security pursuant to this subsection shall be terminated ninety days, or such shorter period as the Commission may determine, after the issuer files a certification with the Commission that the number of holders of record of such

class of security is reduced to less than 300 persons, or, in the case of a bank, a savings and loan holding company (as defined in section 10 of the Home Owners' Loan Act), or a bank holding company, as such term is defined in section 2 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1841), 1,200 persons persons. The Commission shall after notice and opportunity for hearing deny termination of registration if it finds that the certification is untrue. Termination of registration shall be deferred pending final determination on the question of denial.

(5) For the purposes of this subsection the term "class" shall include all securities of an issuer which are of substantially similar character and the holders of which enjoy substantially similar rights and privileges. The Commission may for the purpose of this subsection define by rules and regulations the terms "total assets" and "held of record" as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors in order to prevent circumvention of the provisions of this subsection. For purposes of this subsection, a security futures product shall not be considered a class of equity security of the issuer of the securities underlying the security futures product. For purposes of determining whether an issuer is required to register a security with the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1), the definition of "held of record" shall not include securities held by persons who received the securities pursuant to an employee compensation plan in transactions exempted from the registration requirements of section 5 of the Securities Act of 1933.

(6) EXCLUSION FOR PERSONS HOLDING CERTAIN SECURITIES.—The Commission shall, by rule, exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, securities acquired pursuant to an offering made under section 4(6) of the Securities Act of 1933 from the provisions of this subsection.

(h) The Commission may by rules and regulations, or upon application of an interested person, by order, after notice and opportunity for hearing, exempt in whole or in part any issuer or class of issuers from the provisions of subsection (g) of this section or from section 13, 14, or 15(d) or may exempt from section 16 any officer, director, or beneficial owner of securities of any issuer, any security of which is required to be registered pursuant to subsection (g) hereof, upon such terms and conditions and for such period as it deems necessary or appropriate, if the Commission finds, by reason of the number of public investors, amount of trading interest in the securities, the nature and extent of the activities of the issuer, income or assets of the issuer, or otherwise, that such action is not inconsistent with the public interest or the protection of investors. The Commission may, for the purposes of any of the above-mentioned sections or subsections of this title, classify issuers and prescribe requirements appropriate for each such class.

(i) In respect of any securities issued by banks and savings associations the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act, the powers, functions, and duties vested in the Commission to administer and enforce sections 10A(m), 12, 13, 14(a), 14(c), 14(d), 14(f), and 16 of this Act, and sections 302, 303, 304, 306, 401(b), 404, 406, and 407 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, (1) with respect to national banks and Federal savings associations, the accounts of which are insured by the Fed-

eral Deposit Insurance Corporation are vested in the Comptroller of the Currency, (2) with respect to all other member banks of the Federal Reserve System are vested in the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and (3) with respect to all other insured banks and State savings associations, the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, are vested in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation. The Comptroller of the Currency, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation shall have the power to make such rules and regulations as may be necessary for the execution of the functions vested in them as provided in this subsection. In carrying out their responsibilities under this subsection, the agencies named in the first sentence of this subsection shall issue substantially similar regulations to regulations and rules issued by the Commission under sections 10A(m), 12, 13, 14(a), 14(c), 14(d), 14(f) and 16 of this Act, and sections 302, 303, 304, 306, 401(b), 404, 406, and 407 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, unless they find that implementation of substantially similar regulations with respect to insured banks and insured institutions are not necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for protection of investors, and publish such findings, and the detailed reasons therefor, in the Federal Register. Such regulations of the above-named agencies, or the reasons for failure to publish such substantially similar regulations to those of the Commission, shall be published in the Federal Register within 120 days of the date of enactment of this subsection, and, thereafter, within 60 days of any changes made by the Commission in its relevant regulations and rules.

(j) The Commission is authorized, by order, as it deems necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors to deny, to suspend the effective date of, to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or to revoke the registration of a security, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the issuer of such security has failed to comply with any provision of this title or the rules and regulations thereunder. No member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security the registration of which has been and is suspended or revoked pursuant to the preceding sentence.

(k) TRADING SUSPENSIONS; EMERGENCY AUTHORITY.—

(1) TRADING SUSPENSIONS.—If in its opinion the public interest and the protection of investors so require, the Commission is authorized by order—

(A) summarily to suspend trading in any security (other than an exempted security) for a period not exceeding 10 business days, and

(B) summarily to suspend all trading on any national securities exchange or otherwise, in securities other than exempted securities, for a period not exceeding 90 calendar days.

The action described in subparagraph (B) shall not take effect unless the Commission notifies the President of its decision and the President notifies the Commission that the President does not disapprove of such decision. If the actions described

in subparagraph (A) or (B) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(2) EMERGENCY ORDERS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The Commission, in an emergency, may by order summarily take such action to alter, supplement, suspend, or impose requirements or restrictions with respect to any matter or action subject to regulation by the Commission or a self-regulatory organization under the securities laws, as the Commission determines is necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors—

(i) to maintain or restore fair and orderly securities markets (other than markets in exempted securities);

(ii) to ensure prompt, accurate, and safe clearance and settlement of transactions in securities (other than exempted securities); or

(iii) to reduce, eliminate, or prevent the substantial disruption by the emergency of—

(I) securities markets (other than markets in exempted securities), investment companies, or any other significant portion or segment of such markets; or

(II) the transmission or processing of securities transactions (other than transactions in exempted securities).

(B) EFFECTIVE PERIOD.—An order of the Commission under this paragraph shall continue in effect for the period specified by the Commission, and may be extended. Except as provided in subparagraph (C), an order of the Commission under this paragraph may not continue in effect for more than 10 business days, including extensions.

(C) EXTENSION.—An order of the Commission under this paragraph may be extended to continue in effect for more than 10 business days if, at the time of the extension, the Commission finds that the emergency still exists and determines that the continuation of the order beyond 10 business days is necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors to attain an objective described in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph (A). In no event shall an order of the Commission under this paragraph continue in effect for more than 30 calendar days.

(D) SECURITY FUTURES.—If the actions described in subparagraph (A) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(E) EXEMPTION.—In exercising its authority under this paragraph, the Commission shall not be required to comply with the provisions of—

(i) section 19(c); or

(ii) section 553 of title 5, United States Code.

(3) TERMINATION OF EMERGENCY ACTIONS BY PRESIDENT.—The President may direct that action taken by the Commission under paragraph (1)(B) or paragraph (2) of this subsection shall not continue in effect.

(4) COMPLIANCE WITH ORDERS.—No member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security in contravention of an order of the Commission under this subsection unless such order has been stayed, modified, or set aside as provided in paragraph (5) of this subsection or has ceased to be effective upon direction of the President as provided in paragraph (3).

(5) LIMITATIONS ON REVIEW OF ORDERS.—An order of the Commission pursuant to this subsection shall be subject to review only as provided in section 25(a) of this title. Review shall be based on an examination of all the information before the Commission at the time such order was issued. The reviewing court shall not enter a stay, writ of mandamus, or similar relief unless the court finds, after notice and hearing before a panel of the court, that the Commission's action is arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law.

(6) CONSULTATION.—Prior to taking any action described in paragraph (1)(B), the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, unless such consultation is impracticable in light of the emergency.

(7) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this subsection, the term "emergency" means—

(A) a major market disturbance characterized by or constituting—

(i) sudden and excessive fluctuations of securities prices generally, or a substantial threat thereof, that threaten fair and orderly markets; or

(ii) a substantial disruption of the safe or efficient operation of the national system for clearance and settlement of transactions in securities, or a substantial threat thereof; or

(B) a major disturbance that substantially disrupts, or threatens to substantially disrupt—

(i) the functioning of securities markets, investment companies, or any other significant portion or segment of the securities markets; or

(ii) the transmission or processing of securities transactions.

(l) It shall be unlawful for an issuer, any class of whose securities is registered pursuant to this section or would be required to be so registered except for the exemption from registration provided by subsection (g)(2)(B) or (g)(2)(G) of this section, by the use of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or of the mails, to issue, either originally or upon transfer, any of such securities in a form or with a format which contravenes such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of transactions in securities. The provisions of this subsection shall

not apply to variable annuity contracts or variable life policies issued by an insurance company or its separate accounts.

* * * * * * *

REGISTRATION AND REGULATION OF BROKERS AND DEALERS

SEC. 15. (a)(1) It shall be unlawful for any broker or dealer which is either a person other than a natural person or a natural person not associated with a broker or dealer which is a person other than a natural person (other than such a broker or dealer whose business is exclusively intrastate and who does not make use of any facility of a national securities exchange) to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transactions in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security or commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) unless such broker or dealer is registered in accordance with subsection (b) of this section.

(2) The Commission, by rule or order, as it deems consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt from paragraph (1) of this subsection any broker or dealer or class of brokers or dealers specified in such rule or order.

(b)(1) A broker or dealer may be registered by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such broker or dealer and any persons associated with such broker or dealer as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Within forty-five days of the date of the filing of such application (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents), the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred twenty days of the date of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings, the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for up to ninety days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant such registration if the Commission finds that the requirements of this section are satisfied. The order granting registration shall not be effective until such broker or dealer has become a member of a registered securities association, or until such broker or dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange, if such broker or dealer effects transactions solely on that exchange, unless the Commission has exempted such broker or dealer, by rule or order, from such membership. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such a finding or if it finds that if the applicant were so registered, its

registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under paragraph (4) of this subsection.

(2)(A) An application for registration of a broker or dealer to be formed or organized may be made by a broker or dealer to which the broker or dealer to be formed or organized is to be the successor. Such application, in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe, shall contain such information and documents concerning the applicant, the successor, and any persons associated with the applicant or the successor, as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. The grant or denial of registration to such an applicant shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection. If the Commission grants such registration, the registration shall terminate on the forty-fifth day after the effective date thereof, unless prior thereto the successor shall, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe, adopt the application for registration as its own.

(B) Any person who is a broker or dealer solely by reason of acting as a municipal securities dealer or municipal securities broker, who so acts through a separately identifiable department or division, and who so acted in such a manner on the date of enactment of the Securities Acts Amendments of 1975, may, in accordance with such terms and conditions as the Commission, by rule, prescribes as necessary and appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, register such separately identifiable department or division in accordance with this subsection. If any such department or division is so registered, the department or division and not such person himself shall be the broker or dealer for purposes of this title.

(C) Within six months of the date of the granting of registration to a broker or dealer, the Commission, or upon the authorization and direction of the Commission, a registered securities association or national securities exchange of which such broker or dealer is a member, shall conduct an inspection of the broker or dealer to determine whether it is operating in conformity with the provisions of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder: *Provided, however,* That the Commission may delay such inspection of any class of brokers or dealers for a period not to exceed six months.

(3) Any provision of this title (other than section 5 and subsection (a) of this section) which prohibits any act, practice, or course of business if the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce is used in connection therewith shall also prohibit any such act, practice, or course of business by any registered broker or dealer or any person acting on behalf of such a broker or dealer, irrespective of any use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in connection therewith.

(4) The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoke the registration of any broker or dealer if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming such, or any person asso-

ciated with such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming so associated—

(A) has willfully made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with the Commission or with any other appropriate regulatory agency under this title, or in any proceeding before the Commission with respect to registration, any statement which was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such application or report any material fact which is required to be stated therein.

(B) has been convicted within ten years preceding the filing of any application for registration or at any time thereafter of any felony or misdemeanor or of a substantially equivalent crime by a foreign court of competent jurisdiction which the Commission finds—

(i) involves the purchase or sale of any security, the taking of a false oath, the making of a false report, bribery, perjury, burglary, any substantially equivalent activity however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government, or conspiracy to commit any such offense;

(ii) arises out of the conduct of the business of a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer municipal advisor,, government securities broker, government securities dealer, investment adviser, bank, insurance company, fiduciary, transfer agent, nationally recognized statistical rating organization, foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.) or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation;

(iii) involves the larceny, theft, robbery, extortion, forgery, counterfeiting, fraudulent concealment, embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, or misappropriation of funds, or securities, or substantially equivalent activity however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government; or

(iv) involves the violation of section 152, 1341, 1342, or 1343 or chapter 25 or 47 of title 18, United States Code, or a violation of a substantially equivalent foreign statute.

(C) is permanently or temporarily enjoined by order, judgment, or decree of any court of competent jurisdiction from acting as an investment adviser, underwriter, broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer municipal advisor,, government securities broker, government securities dealer, security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant, transfer agent, nationally recognized statistical rating organization, foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation, or as an affiliated person or employee of any investment company, bank, insurance company, foreign entity substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act or any substantially equivalent foreign

statute or regulation, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with any such activity, or in connection with the purchase or sale of any security.

(D) has willfully violated any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Commodity Exchange Act, this title, the rules or regulations under any of such statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or is unable to comply with any such provision.

(E) has willfully aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured the violation by any other person of any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Commodity Exchange Act, this title, the rules or regulations under any of such statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or has failed reasonably to supervise, with a view to preventing violations of the provisions of such statutes, rules, and regulations, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision. For the purposes of this subparagraph (E) no person shall be deemed to have failed reasonably to supervise any other person, if—

(i) there have been established procedures, and a system for applying such procedures, which would reasonably be expected to prevent and detect, insofar as practicable, any such violation by such other person, and

(ii) such person has reasonably discharged the duties and obligations incumbent upon him by reason of such procedures and system without reasonable cause to believe that such procedures and system were not being complied with.

(F) is subject to any order of the Commission barring or suspending the right of the person to be associated with a broker, dealer, security-based swap dealer, or a major security-based swap participant;

(G) has been found by a foreign financial regulatory authority to have—

(i) made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with a foreign financial regulatory authority, or in any proceeding before a foreign financial regulatory authority with respect to registration, any statement that was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any application or report to the foreign financial regulatory authority any material fact that is required to be stated therein;

(ii) violated any foreign statute or regulation regarding transactions in securities, or contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery, traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market or any board of trade;

(iii) aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured the violation by any person of any provision of any statutory provisions enacted by a foreign government, or rules or regulations thereunder, empowering a foreign

financial regulatory authority regarding transactions in securities, or contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery, traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market or any board of trade, or has been found, by a foreign financial regulatory authority, to have failed reasonably to supervise, with a view to preventing violations of such statutory provisions, rules, and regulations, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision; or

(H) is subject to any final order of a State securities commission (or any agency or officer performing like functions), State authority that supervises or examines banks, savings associations, or credit unions, State insurance commission (or any agency or office performing like functions), an appropriate Federal banking agency (as defined in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(q))), or the National Credit Union Administration, that—

(i) bars such person from association with an entity regulated by such commission, authority, agency, or officer, or from engaging in the business of securities, insurance, banking, savings association activities, or credit union activities; or

(ii) constitutes a final order based on violations of any laws or regulations that prohibit fraudulent, manipulative, or deceptive conduct.

(5) Pending final determination whether any registration under this subsection shall be revoked, the Commission, by order, may suspend such registration, if such suspension appears to the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Any registered broker or dealer may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any registered broker or dealer is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a broker or dealer, the Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration of such broker or dealer.

(6)(A) With respect to any person who is associated, who is seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, who was associated or was seeking to become associated with a broker or dealer, or any person participating, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, who was participating, in an offering of any penny stock, the Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities or functions of such person, or suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or bar any such person from being associated with a broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, transfer agent, or nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or from participating in an offering of penny stock, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person—

(i) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of this subsection;

(ii) has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph; or

(iii) is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).

(B) It shall be unlawful—

(i) for any person as to whom an order under subparagraph (A) is in effect, without the consent of the Commission, willfully to become, or to be, associated with a broker or dealer in contravention of such order, or to participate in an offering of penny stock in contravention of such order;

(ii) for any broker or dealer to permit such a person, without the consent of the Commission, to become or remain, a person associated with the broker or dealer in contravention of such order, if such broker or dealer knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order; or

(iii) for any broker or dealer to permit such a person, without the consent of the Commission, to participate in an offering of penny stock in contravention of such order, if such broker or dealer knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order and of such participation.

(C) For purposes of this paragraph, the term "person participating in an offering of penny stock" includes any person acting as any promoter, finder, consultant, agent, or other person who engages in activities with a broker, dealer, or issuer for purposes of the issuance or trading in any penny stock, or inducing or attempting to induce the purchase or sale of any penny stock. The Commission may, by rule or regulation, define such term to include other activities, and may, by rule, regulation, or order, exempt any person or class of persons, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, from such term.

(7) No registered broker or dealer or government securities broker or government securities dealer registered (or required to register) under section 15C(a)(1)(A) shall effect any transaction in, or induce the purchase or sale of, any security unless such broker or dealer meets such standards of operational capability and such broker or dealer and all natural persons associated with such broker or dealer meet such standards of training, experience, competence, and such other qualifications as the Commission finds necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. The Commission shall establish such standards by rules and regulations, which may—

(A) specify that all or any portion of such standards shall be applicable to any class of brokers and dealers and persons associated with brokers and dealers;

(B) require persons in any such class to pass tests prescribed in accordance with such rules and regulations, which tests shall, with respect to any class of partners, officers, or supervisory employees (which latter term may be defined by the Commission's rules and regulations and as so defined shall include branch managers of brokers or dealers) engaged in the management of the broker or dealer, include questions relating

to bookkeeping, accounting, internal control over cash and securities, supervision of employees, maintenance of records, and other appropriate matters; and

(C) provide that persons in any such class other than brokers and dealers and partners, officers, and supervisory employees of brokers or dealers, may be qualified solely on the basis of compliance with such standards of training and such other qualifications as the Commission finds appropriate.

The Commission, by rule, may prescribe reasonable fees and charges to defray its costs in carrying out this paragraph, including, but not limited to, fees for any test administered by it or under its direction. The Commission may cooperate with registered securities associations and national securities exchanges in devising and administering tests and may require registered brokers and dealers and persons associated with such brokers and dealers to pass tests administered by or on behalf of any such association or exchange and to pay such association or exchange reasonable fees or charges to defray the costs incurred by such association or exchange in administering such tests.

(8) It shall be unlawful for any registered broker or dealer to effect any transaction in, or induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than or commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills), unless such broker or dealer is a member of a securities association registered pursuant to section 15A of this title or effects transactions in securities solely on a national securities exchange of which it is a member.

(9) The Commission by rule or order, as it deems consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt from paragraph (8) of this subsection any broker or dealer or class of brokers or dealers specified in such rule or order.

(10) For the purposes of determining whether a person is subject to a statutory disqualification under section 6(c)(2), 15A(g)(2), or 17A(b)(4)(A) of this title, the term "Commission" in paragraph (4)(B) of this subsection shall mean "exchange", "association", or "clearing agency", respectively.

(11) BROKER/DEALER REGISTRATION WITH RESPECT TO TRANSACTIONS IN SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS.—

(A) NOTICE REGISTRATION.—

(i) CONTENTS OF NOTICE.—Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), a broker or dealer required to register only because it effects transactions in security futures products on an exchange registered pursuant to section 6(g) may register for purposes of this section by filing with the Commission a written notice in such form and containing such information concerning such broker or dealer and any persons associated with such broker or dealer as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. A broker or dealer may not register under this paragraph unless that broker or dealer is a member of a national securities association registered under section 15A(k).

(ii) IMMEDIATE EFFECTIVENESS.—Such registration shall be effective contemporaneously with the submis-

sion of notice, in written or electronic form, to the Commission, except that such registration shall not be effective if the registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under paragraph (4).

(iii) SUSPENSION.—Such registration shall be suspended immediately if a national securities association registered pursuant to section 15A(k) of this title suspends the membership of that broker or dealer.

(iv) TERMINATION.—Such registration shall be terminated immediately if any of the above stated conditions for registration set forth in this paragraph are no longer satisfied.

(B) EXEMPTIONS FOR REGISTERED BROKERS AND DEALERS.—A broker or dealer registered pursuant to the requirements of subparagraph (A) shall be exempt from the following provisions of this title and the rules thereunder with respect to transactions in security futures products:

(i) Section 8.

(ii) Section 11.

(iii) Subsections (c)(3) and (c)(5) of this section.

(iv) Section 15B.

(v) Section 15C.

(vi) Subsections (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) of section 17.

(12) EXEMPTION FOR SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCT EXCHANGE MEMBERS.—

(A) REGISTRATION EXEMPTION.—A natural person shall be exempt from the registration requirements of this section if such person—

(i) is a member of a designated contract market registered with the Commission as an exchange pursuant to section 6(g);

(ii) effects transactions only in securities on the exchange of which such person is a member; and

(iii) does not directly accept or solicit orders from public customers or provide advice to public customers in connection with the trading of security futures products.

(B) OTHER EXEMPTIONS.—A natural person exempt from registration pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall also be exempt from the following provisions of this title and the rules thereunder:

(i) Section 8.

(ii) Section 11.

(iii) Subsections (c)(3), (c)(5), and (e) of this section.

(iv) Section 15B.

(v) Section 15C.

(vi) Subsections (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) of section 17.

(13) REGISTRATION EXEMPTION FOR MERGER AND ACQUISITION BROKERS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), an M&A broker shall be exempt from registration under this section.

(B) EXCLUDED ACTIVITIES.—An M&A broker is not exempt from registration under this paragraph if such broker does any of the following:

(i) Directly or indirectly, in connection with the transfer of ownership of an eligible privately held company, receives, holds, transmits, or has custody of the funds or securities to be exchanged by the parties to the transaction.

(ii) Engages on behalf of an issuer in a public offering of any class of securities that is registered, or is required to be registered, with the Commission under section 12 or with respect to which the issuer files, or is required to file, periodic information, documents, and reports under subsection (d).

(iii) Engages on behalf of any party in a transaction involving a shell company, other than a business combination related shell company.

(iv) Directly, or indirectly through any of its affiliates, provides financing related to the transfer of ownership of an eligible privately held company.

(v) Assists any party to obtain financing from an unaffiliated third party without—

(I) complying with all other applicable laws in connection with such assistance, including, if applicable, Regulation T (12 C.F.R. 220 et seq.); and

(II) disclosing any compensation in writing to the party.

(vi) Represents both the buyer and the seller in the same transaction without providing clear written disclosure as to the parties the broker represents and obtaining written consent from both parties to the joint representation.

(vii) Facilitates a transaction with a group of buyers formed with the assistance of the M&A broker to acquire the eligible privately held company.

(viii) Engages in a transaction involving the transfer of ownership of an eligible privately held company to a passive buyer or group of passive buyers.

(ix) Binds a party to a transfer of ownership of an eligible privately held company.

(C) DISQUALIFICATION.—An M&A broker is not exempt from registration under this paragraph if such broker (and if and as applicable, including any officer, director, member, manager, partner, or employee of such broker)—

(i) has been barred from association with a broker or dealer by the Commission, any State, or any self-regulatory organization; or

(ii) is suspended from association with a broker or dealer.

(D) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to limit any other authority of the Commission to exempt any person, or any class of persons, from any provision of this title, or from any provision of any rule or regulation thereunder.

(E) DEFINITIONS.—In this paragraph:

(i) BUSINESS COMBINATION RELATED SHELL COMPANY.—The term "business combination related shell company" means a shell company that is formed by an entity that is not a shell company—

(I) solely for the purpose of changing the corporate domicile of that entity solely within the United States; or

(II) solely for the purpose of completing a business combination transaction (as defined under section 230.165(f) of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations) among one or more entities other than the company itself, none of which is a shell company.

(ii) CONTROL.—The term "control" means the power, directly or indirectly, to direct the management or policies of a company, whether through ownership of securities, by contract, or otherwise. There is a presumption of control if, upon completion of a transaction, the buyer or group of buyers—

(I) has the right to vote 25 percent or more of a class of voting securities or the power to sell or direct the sale of 25 percent or more of a class of voting securities; or

(II) in the case of a partnership or limited liability company, has the right to receive upon dissolution, or has contributed, 25 percent or more of the capital.

(iii) ELIGIBLE PRIVATELY HELD COMPANY.—The term "eligible privately held company" means a privately held company that meets both of the following conditions:

(I) The company does not have any class of securities registered, or required to be registered, with the Commission under section 12 or with respect to which the company files, or is required to file, periodic information, documents, and reports under subsection (d).

(II) In the fiscal year ending immediately before the fiscal year in which the services of the M&A broker are initially engaged with respect to the securities transaction, the company meets either or both of the following conditions (determined in accordance with the historical financial accounting records of the company):

(aa) The earnings of the company before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization are less than $25,000,000.

(bb) The gross revenues of the company are less than $250,000,000.

For purposes of this subclause, the Commission may by rule modify the dollar figures if the Commission determines that such a modification is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(iv) M&A BROKER.—The term "M&A broker" means a broker, and any person associated with a broker, engaged in the business of effecting securities transactions solely in connection with the transfer of ownership of an eligible privately held company, regardless of whether the broker acts on behalf of a seller or buyer, through the purchase, sale, exchange, issuance, repurchase, or redemption of, or a business combination involving, securities or assets of the eligible privately held company, if the broker reasonably believes that—

(I) upon consummation of the transaction, any person acquiring securities or assets of the eligible privately held company, acting alone or in concert—

(aa) will control the eligible privately held company or the business conducted with the assets of the eligible privately held company; and

(bb) directly or indirectly, will be active in the management of the eligible privately held company or the business conducted with the assets of the eligible privately held company, including without limitation, for example, by—

(AA) electing executive officers;

(BB) approving the annual budget;

(CC) serving as an executive or other executive manager; or

(DD) carrying out such other activities as the Commission may, by rule, determine to be in the public interest; and

(II) if any person is offered securities in exchange for securities or assets of the eligible privately held company, such person will, prior to becoming legally bound to consummate the transaction, receive or have reasonable access to the most recent fiscal year-end financial statements of the issuer of the securities as customarily prepared by the management of the issuer in the normal course of operations and, if the financial statements of the issuer are audited, reviewed, or compiled, any related statement by the independent accountant, a balance sheet dated not more than 120 days before the date of the offer, and information pertaining to the management, business, results of operations for the period covered by the foregoing financial statements, and material loss contingencies of the issuer.

(v) SHELL COMPANY.—The term "shell company" means a company that at the time of a transaction with an eligible privately held company—

(I) has no or nominal operations; and

(II) has—

(aa) no or nominal assets;

(bb) assets consisting solely of cash and cash equivalents; or

(cc) assets consisting of any amount of cash and cash equivalents and nominal other assets.

(F) INFLATION ADJUSTMENT.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—On the date that is 5 years after the date of the enactment of this paragraph, and every 5 years thereafter, each dollar amount in subparagraph (E)(iii)(II) shall be adjusted by—

(I) dividing the annual value of the Employment Cost Index For Wages and Salaries, Private Industry Workers (or any successor index), as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, for the calendar year preceding the calendar year in which the adjustment is being made by the annual value of such index (or successor) for the calendar year ending December 31, 2020; and

(II) multiplying such dollar amount by the quotient obtained under subclause (I).

(ii) ROUNDING.—Each dollar amount determined under clause (i) shall be rounded to the nearest multiple of $100,000.

(c)(1)(A) No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills), or any security-based swap agreement by means of any manipulative, deceptive, or other fraudulent device or contrivance.

(B) No broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security or any security-based swap agreement involving a municipal security by means of any manipulative, deceptive, or other fraudulent device or contrivance.

(C) No government securities broker or government securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or to attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security or any security-based swap agreement involving a government security by means of any manipulative, deceptive, or other fraudulent device or contrivance.

(2)(A) No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security or commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) otherwise than on a national securities exchange of which it is a member, in connection with which such broker or dealer engages in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative act or practice, or makes any fictitious quotation.

(B) No broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate com-

merce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security in connection with which such broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer engages in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative act or practice, or makes any fictitious quotation.

(C) No government securities broker or government securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security in connection with which such government securities broker or government securities dealer engages in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative act or practice, or makes any fictitious quotation.

(D) The Commission shall, for the purposes of this paragraph, by rules and regulations define, and prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent, such acts and practices as are fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative and such quotations as are fictitious.

(E) The Commission shall, prior to adopting any rule or regulation under subparagraph (C), consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury and each appropriate regulatory agency. If the Secretary of the Treasury or any appropriate regulatory agency comments in writing on a proposed rule or regulation of the Commission under such subparagraph (C) that has been published for comment, the Commission shall respond in writing to such written comment before adopting the proposed rule. If the Secretary of the Treasury determines, and notifies the Commission, that such rule or regulation, if implemented, would, or as applied does (i) adversely affect the liquidity or efficiency of the market for government securities; or (ii) impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section, the Commission shall, prior to adopting the proposed rule or regulation, find that such rule or regulation is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section notwithstanding the Secretary's determination.

(3)(A) No broker or dealer (other than a government securities broker or government securities dealer, except a registered broker or dealer) shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security (except a government security) or commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to provide safeguards with respect to the financial responsibility and related practices of brokers and dealers including, but not limited to, the acceptance of custody and use of customers' securities and the carrying and use of customers' deposits or credit balances. Such rules and regulations shall (A) require the maintenance of reserves with respect to customers' deposits or credit balances, and (B) no later than September 1, 1975, establish minimum financial responsibility requirements for all brokers and dealers.

(B) Consistent with this title, the Commission, in consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, shall issue such rules, regulations, or orders as are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting regulations applicable to any broker or dealer reg-

istered with the Commission pursuant to section 15(b) (except paragraph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (except paragraph (2) thereof), with respect to the application of: (i) the provisions of section 8, section 15(c)(3), and section 17 of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder related to the treatment of customer funds, securities, or property, maintenance of books and records, financial reporting, or other financial responsibility rules, involving security futures products; and (ii) similar provisions of the Commodity Exchange Act and rules and regulations thereunder involving security futures products.

(C) Notwithstanding any provision of sections 2(a)(1)(C)(i) or 4d(a)(2) of the Commodity Exchange Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, and pursuant to an exemption granted by the Commission under section 36 of this title or pursuant to a rule or regulation, cash and securities may be held by a broker or dealer registered pursuant to subsection (b)(1) and also registered as a futures commission merchant pursuant to section 4f(a)(1) of the Commodity Exchange Act, in a portfolio margining account carried as a futures account subject to section 4d of the Commodity Exchange Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, pursuant to a portfolio margining program approved by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, and subject to subchapter IV of chapter 7 of title 11 of the United States Code and the rules and regulations thereunder. The Commission shall consult with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission to adopt rules to ensure that such transactions and accounts are subject to comparable requirements to the extent practicable for similar products.

(4) If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that any person subject to the provisions of section 12, 13, 14, or subsection (d) of section 15 of this title or any rule or regulation thereunder has failed to comply with any such provision, rule, or regulation in any material respect, the Commission may publish its findings and issue an order requiring such person, and any person who was a cause of the failure to comply due to an act or omission the person knew or should have known would contribute to the failure to comply, to comply, or to take steps to effect compliance, with such provision or such rule or regulation thereunder upon such terms and conditions and within such time as the Commission may specify in such order.

(5) No dealer (other than a specialist registered on a national securities exchange) acting in the capacity of market maker or otherwise shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security or a municipal security) in contravention of such specified and appropriate standards with respect to dealing as the Commission, by rule, shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to maintain fair and orderly markets, or to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a national market system. Under the rules of the Commission a dealer in a security may be prohibited from acting as broker in that security.

(6) No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security, municipal security, commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors or to perfect or remove impediments to a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, with respect to the time and method of, and the form and format of documents used in connection with, making settlements of and payments for transactions in securities, making transfers and deliveries of securities, and closing accounts. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed (A) to affect the authority of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, pursuant to section 7 of this title, to prescribe rules and regulations for the purpose of preventing the excessive use of credit for the purchase or carrying of securities, or (B) to authorize the Commission to prescribe rules or regulations for such purpose.

(7) In connection with any bid for or purchase of a government security related to an offering of government securities by or on behalf of an issuer, no government securities broker, government securities dealer, or bidder for or purchaser of securities in such offering shall knowingly or willfully make any false or misleading written statement or omit any fact necessary to make any written statement made not misleading.

(8) PROHIBITION OF REFERRAL FEES.—No broker or dealer, or person associated with a broker or dealer, may solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, remuneration for assisting an attorney in obtaining the representation of any person in any private action arising under this title or under the Securities Act of 1933.

(d) SUPPLEMENTARY AND PERIODIC INFORMATION.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Each issuer which has filed a registration statement containing an undertaking which is or becomes operative under this subsection as in effect prior to the date of enactment of the Securities Acts Amendments of 1964, and each issuer which shall after such date file a registration statement which has become effective pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, such supplementary and periodic information, documents, and reports as may be required pursuant to section 13 of this title in respect of a security registered pursuant to section 12 of this title. The duty to file under this subsection shall be automatically suspended if and so long as any issue of securities of such issuer is registered pursuant to section 12 of this title. The duty to file under this subsection shall also be automatically suspended as to any fiscal year, other than the fiscal year within which such registration statement became effective, if, at the beginning of such fiscal year, the securities of each class, other than any class of asset-backed securities, to which the registration statement relates are held of record by less than 300 persons, or, in the case of a bank, a savings and loan holding company (as defined

in section 10 of the Home Owners' Loan Act), or a bank holding company, as such term is defined in section 2 of the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956 (12 U.S.C. 1841), 1,200 persons persons. For the purposes of this subsection, the term "class" shall be construed to include all securities of an issuer which are of substantially similar character and the holders of which enjoy substantially similar rights and privileges. The Commission may, for the purpose of this subsection, define by rules and regulations the term "held of record" as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors in order to prevent circumvention of the provisions of this subsection. Nothing in this subsection shall apply to securities issued by a foreign government or political subdivision thereof.

(2) ASSET-BACKED SECURITIES.—

(A) SUSPENSION OF DUTY TO FILE.—The Commission may, by rule or regulation, provide for the suspension or termination of the duty to file under this subsection for any class of asset-backed security, on such terms and conditions and for such period or periods as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) CLASSIFICATION OF ISSUERS.—The Commission may, for purposes of this subsection, classify issuers and prescribe requirements appropriate for each class of issuers of asset-backed securities.

(e) NOTICES TO CUSTOMERS REGARDING SECURITIES LENDING.—Every registered broker or dealer shall provide notice to its customers that they may elect not to allow their fully paid securities to be used in connection with short sales. If a broker or dealer uses a customer's securities in connection with short sales, the broker or dealer shall provide notice to its customer that the broker or dealer may receive compensation in connection with lending the customer's securities. The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, may prescribe the form, content, time, and manner of delivery of any notice required under this paragraph.

(f) The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors or to assure equal regulation, may require any member of a national securities exchange not required to register under section 15 of this title and any person associated with any such member to comply with any provision of this title (other than section 15(a)) or the rules or regulations thereunder which by its terms regulates or prohibits any act, practice, or course of business by a "broker or dealer" or "registered broker or dealer" or a "person associated with a broker or dealer," respectively.

(g) Every registered broker or dealer shall establish, maintain, and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed, taking into consideration the nature of such broker's or dealer's business, to prevent the misuse in violation of this title, or the rules or regulations thereunder, of material, nonpublic information by such broker or dealer or any person associated with such broker or dealer. The Commission, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, shall adopt

rules or regulations to require specific policies or procedures reasonably designed to prevent misuse in violation of this title (or the rules or regulations thereunder) of material, nonpublic information.

(h) REQUIREMENTS FOR TRANSACTIONS IN PENNY STOCKS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any penny stock by any customer except in accordance with the requirements of this subsection and the rules and regulations prescribed under this subsection.

(2) RISK DISCLOSURE WITH RESPECT TO PENNY STOCKS.—Prior to effecting any transaction in any penny stock, a broker or dealer shall give the customer a risk disclosure document that—

(A) contains a description of the nature and level of risk in the market for penny stocks in both public offerings and secondary trading;

(B) contains a description of the broker's or dealer's duties to the customer and of the rights and remedies available to the customer with respect to violations of such duties or other requirements of Federal securities laws;

(C) contains a brief, clear, narrative description of a dealer market, including "bid" and "ask" prices for penny stocks and the significance of the spread between the bid and ask prices;

(D) contains the toll free telephone number for inquiries on disciplinary actions established pursuant to section 15A(i) of this title;

(E) defines significant terms used in the disclosure document or in the conduct of trading in penny stocks; and

(F) contains such other information, and is in such form (including language, type size, and format), as the Commission shall require by rule or regulation.

(3) COMMISSION RULES RELATING TO DISCLOSURE.—The Commission shall adopt rules setting forth additional standards for the disclosure by brokers and dealers to customers of information concerning transactions in penny stocks. Such rules—

(A) shall require brokers and dealers to disclose to each customer, prior to effecting any transaction in, and at the time of confirming any transaction with respect to any penny stock, in accordance with such procedures and methods as the Commission may require consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors—

(i) the bid and ask prices for penny stock, or such other information as the Commission may, by rule, require to provide customers with more useful and reliable information relating to the price of such stock;

(ii) the number of shares to which such bid and ask prices apply, or other comparable information relating to the depth and liquidity of the market for such stock; and

(iii) the amount and a description of any compensation that the broker or dealer and the associated person thereof will receive or has received in connection with such transaction;

(B) shall require brokers and dealers to provide, to each customer whose account with the broker or dealer contains penny stocks, a monthly statement indicating the market value of the penny stocks in that account or indicating that the market value of such stock cannot be determined because of the unavailability of firm quotes; and

(C) may, as the Commission finds necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, require brokers and dealers to disclose to customers additional information concerning transactions in penny stocks.

(4) EXEMPTIONS.—The Commission, as it determines consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, may by rule, regulation, or order exempt in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, any person or class of persons, or any transaction or class of transactions, from the requirements of this subsection. Such exemptions shall include an exemption for brokers and dealers based on the minimal percentage of the broker's or dealer's commissions, commission-equivalents, and markups received from transactions in penny stocks.

(5) REGULATIONS.—It shall be unlawful for any person to violate such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe in the public interest or for the protection of investors or to maintain fair and orderly markets—

(A) as necessary or appropriate to carry out this subsection; or

(B) as reasonably designed to prevent fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative acts and practices with respect to penny stocks.

(i) LIMITATIONS ON STATE LAW.—

(1) CAPITAL, MARGIN, BOOKS AND RECORDS, BONDING, AND REPORTS.—No law, rule, regulation, or order, or other administrative action of any State or political subdivision thereof shall establish capital, custody, margin, financial responsibility, making and keeping records, bonding, or financial or operational reporting requirements for brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, government securities brokers, or government securities dealers that differ from, or are in addition to, the requirements in those areas established under this title. The Commission shall consult periodically the securities commissions (or any agency or office performing like functions) of the States concerning the adequacy of such requirements as established under this title.

(2) FUNDING PORTALS.—

(A) LIMITATION ON STATE LAWS.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), no State or political subdivision thereof may enforce any law, rule, regulation, or other administrative action against a registered funding portal with respect to its business as such.

(B) EXAMINATION AND ENFORCEMENT AUTHORITY.—Subparagraph (A) does not apply with respect to the examination and enforcement of any law, rule, regulation, or administrative action of a State or political subdivision thereof in which the principal place of business of a registered funding portal is located, provided that such law, rule, reg-

ulation, or administrative action is not in addition to or different from the requirements for registered funding portals established by the Commission.

(C) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this paragraph, the term "State" includes the District of Columbia and the territories of the United States.

(3) PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKERS AND FINDERS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—No State or political subdivision thereof may enforce any law, rule, regulation, or other administrative action that imposes greater registration, audit, financial recordkeeping, or reporting requirements on a private placement broker or finder than those that are required under subsections (p) and (q), respectively.

(B) DEFINITION OF STATE.—For purposes of this paragraph, the term "State" includes the District of Columbia and each territory of the United States.

[(3)**]** *(4)* DE MINIMIS TRANSACTIONS BY ASSOCIATED PERSONS.—No law, rule, regulation, or order, or other administrative action of any State or political subdivision thereof may prohibit an associated person of a broker or dealer from effecting a transaction described in **[**paragraph (3)**]** *paragraph (5)* for a customer in such State if—

(A) such associated person is not ineligible to register with such State for any reason other than such a transaction;

(B) such associated person is registered with a registered securities association and at least one State; and

(C) the broker or dealer with which such person is associated is registered with such State.

[(4)**]** *(5)* DESCRIBED TRANSACTIONS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—A transaction is described in this paragraph if—

(i) such transaction is effected—

(I) on behalf of a customer that, for 30 days prior to the day of the transaction, maintained an account with the broker or dealer; and

(II) by an associated person of the broker or dealer—

(aa) to which the customer was assigned for 14 days prior to the day of the transaction; and

(bb) who is registered with a State in which the customer was a resident or was present for at least 30 consecutive days during the 1-year period prior to the day of the transaction; or

(ii) the transaction is effected—

(I) on behalf of a customer that, for 30 days prior to the day of the transaction, maintained an account with the broker or dealer; and

(II) during the period beginning on the date on which such associated person files an application for registration with the State in which the transaction is effected and ending on the earlier of—

(aa) 60 days after the date on which the application is filed; or

(bb) the date on which such State notifies the associated person that it has denied the application for registration or has stayed the pendency of the application for cause.

(B) RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.—For purposes of subparagraph (A)(i)(II)—

(i) each of up to 3 associated persons of a broker or dealer who are designated to effect transactions during the absence or unavailability of the principal associated person for a customer may be treated as an associated person to which such customer is assigned; and

(ii) if the customer is present in another State for 30 or more consecutive days or has permanently changed his or her residence to another State, a transaction is not described in this paragraph, unless the associated person of the broker or dealer files an application for registration with such State not later than 10 business days after the later of the date of the transaction, or the date of the discovery of the presence of the customer in the other State for 30 or more consecutive days or the change in the customer's residence.

(j) RULEMAKING TO EXTEND REQUIREMENTS TO NEW HYBRID PRODUCTS.—

(1) CONSULTATION.—Prior to commencing a rulemaking under this subsection, the Commission shall consult with and seek the concurrence of the Board concerning the imposition of broker or dealer registration requirements with respect to any new hybrid product. In developing and promulgating rules under this subsection, the Commission shall consider the views of the Board, including views with respect to the nature of the new hybrid product; the history, purpose, extent, and appropriateness of the regulation of the new product under the Federal banking laws; and the impact of the proposed rule on the banking industry.

(2) LIMITATION.—The Commission shall not—

(A) require a bank to register as a broker or dealer under this section because the bank engages in any transaction in, or buys or sells, a new hybrid product; or

(B) bring an action against a bank for a failure to comply with a requirement described in subparagraph (A),

unless the Commission has imposed such requirement by rule or regulation issued in accordance with this section.

(3) CRITERIA FOR RULEMAKING.—The Commission shall not impose a requirement under paragraph (2) of this subsection with respect to any new hybrid product unless the Commission determines that—

(A) the new hybrid product is a security; and

(B) imposing such requirement is necessary and appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors.

(4) CONSIDERATIONS.—In making a determination under paragraph (3), the Commission shall consider—

(A) the nature of the new hybrid product; and

(B) the history, purpose, extent, and appropriateness of the regulation of the new hybrid product under the Federal securities laws and under the Federal banking laws.

(5) OBJECTION TO COMMISSION REGULATION.—

(A) FILING OF PETITION FOR REVIEW.—The Board may obtain review of any final regulation described in paragraph (2) in the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit by filing in such court, not later than 60 days after the date of publication of the final regulation, a written petition requesting that the regulation be set aside. Any proceeding to challenge any such rule shall be expedited by the Court of Appeals.

(B) TRANSMITTAL OF PETITION AND RECORD.—A copy of a petition described in subparagraph (A) shall be transmitted as soon as possible by the Clerk of the Court to an officer or employee of the Commission designated for that purpose. Upon receipt of the petition, the Commission shall file with the court the regulation under review and any documents referred to therein, and any other relevant materials prescribed by the court.

(C) EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION.—On the date of the filing of the petition under subparagraph (A), the court has jurisdiction, which becomes exclusive on the filing of the materials set forth in subparagraph (B), to affirm and enforce or to set aside the regulation at issue.

(D) STANDARD OF REVIEW.—The court shall determine to affirm and enforce or set aside a regulation of the Commission under this subsection, based on the determination of the court as to whether—

(i) the subject product is a new hybrid product, as defined in this subsection;

(ii) the subject product is a security; and

(iii) imposing a requirement to register as a broker or dealer for banks engaging in transactions in such product is appropriate in light of the history, purpose, and extent of regulation under the Federal securities laws and under the Federal banking laws, giving deference neither to the views of the Commission nor the Board.

(E) JUDICIAL STAY.—The filing of a petition by the Board pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall operate as a judicial stay, until the date on which the determination of the court is final (including any appeal of such determination).

(F) OTHER AUTHORITY TO CHALLENGE.—Any aggrieved party may seek judicial review of the Commission's rulemaking under this subsection pursuant to section 25 of this title.

(6) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this subsection:

(A) NEW HYBRID PRODUCT.—The term "new hybrid product" means a product that—

(i) was not subjected to regulation by the Commission as a security prior to the date of the enactment of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act;

(ii) is not an identified banking product as such term is defined in section 206 of such Act; and

(iii) is not an equity swap within the meaning of section 206(a)(6) of such Act.

(B) BOARD.—The term "Board" means the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

(j) The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 3A(b) of this title.

(k) REGISTRATION OR SUCCESSION TO A UNITED STATES BROKER OR DEALER.—In determining whether to permit a foreign person or an affiliate of a foreign person to register as a United States broker or dealer, or succeed to the registration of a United States broker or dealer, the Commission may consider whether, for a foreign person, or an affiliate of a foreign person that presents a risk to the stability of the United States financial system, the home country of the foreign person has adopted, or made demonstrable progress toward adopting, an appropriate system of financial regulation to mitigate such risk.

(l) TERMINATION OF A UNITED STATES BROKER OR DEALER.—For a foreign person or an affiliate of a foreign person that presents such a risk to the stability of the United States financial system, the Commission may determine to terminate the registration of such foreign person or an affiliate of such foreign person as a broker or dealer in the United States, if the Commission determines that the home country of the foreign person has not adopted, or made demonstrable progress toward adopting, an appropriate system of financial regulation to mitigate such risk.

(k) STANDARD OF CONDUCT.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act or the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Commission may promulgate rules to provide that, with respect to a broker or dealer, when providing personalized investment advice about securities to a retail customer (and such other customers as the Commission may by rule provide), the standard of conduct for such broker or dealer with respect to such customer shall be the same as the standard of conduct applicable to an investment adviser under section 211 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. The receipt of compensation based on commission or other standard compensation for the sale of securities shall not, in and of itself, be considered a violation of such standard applied to a broker or dealer. Nothing in this section shall require a broker or dealer or registered representative to have a continuing duty of care or loyalty to the customer after providing personalized investment advice about securities.

(2) DISCLOSURE OF RANGE OF PRODUCTS OFFERED.—Where a broker or dealer sells only proprietary or other limited range of products, as determined by the Commission, the Commission may by rule require that such broker or dealer provide notice to each retail customer and obtain the consent or acknowledgment of the customer. The sale of only proprietary or other limited range of products by a broker or dealer shall not, in and of itself, be considered a violation of the standard set forth in paragraph (1).

(l) OTHER MATTERS.—The Commission shall—

(1) facilitate the provision of simple and clear disclosures to investors regarding the terms of their relationships with brokers, dealers, and investment advisers, including any material conflicts of interest; and

(2) examine and, where appropriate, promulgate rules prohibiting or restricting certain sales practices, conflicts of interest, and compensation schemes for brokers, dealers, and investment advisers that the Commission deems contrary to the public interest and the protection of investors.

(m) HARMONIZATION OF ENFORCEMENT.—The enforcement authority of the Commission with respect to violations of the standard of conduct applicable to a broker or dealer providing personalized investment advice about securities to a retail customer shall include—

(1) the enforcement authority of the Commission with respect to such violations provided under this Act; and

(2) the enforcement authority of the Commission with respect to violations of the standard of conduct applicable to an investment adviser under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, including the authority to impose sanctions for such violations, and

the Commission shall seek to prosecute and sanction violators of the standard of conduct applicable to a broker or dealer providing personalized investment advice about securities to a retail customer under this Act to same extent as the Commission prosecutes and sanctions violators of the standard of conduct applicable to an investment advisor under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940.

(n) DISCLOSURES TO RETAIL INVESTORS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of the securities laws, the Commission may issue rules designating documents or information that shall be provided by a broker or dealer to a retail investor before the purchase of an investment product or service by the retail investor.

(2) CONSIDERATIONS.—In developing any rules under paragraph (1), the Commission shall consider whether the rules will promote investor protection, efficiency, competition, and capital formation.

(3) FORM AND CONTENTS OF DOCUMENTS AND INFORMATION.—Any documents or information designated under a rule promulgated under paragraph (1) shall—

(A) be in a summary format; and

(B) contain clear and concise information about—

(i) investment objectives, strategies, costs, and risks; and

(ii) any compensation or other financial incentive received by a broker, dealer, or other intermediary in connection with the purchase of retail investment products.

(o) AUTHORITY TO RESTRICT MANDATORY PRE-DISPUTE ARBITRATION.—The Commission, by rule, may prohibit, or impose conditions or limitations on the use of, agreements that require customers or clients of any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer to arbitrate any future dispute between them arising under the Federal securities laws, the rules and regulations thereunder, or

the rules of a self-regulatory organization if it finds that such prohibition, imposition of conditions, or limitations are in the public interest and for the protection of investors.

(p) PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKER SAFE HARBOR.—

(1) REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this subsection the Commission shall promulgate regulations with respect to private placement brokers that are no more stringent than those imposed on funding portals.

(2) NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS.—Not later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of this subsection the Commission shall promulgate regulations that require the rules of any national securities association to allow a private placement broker to become a member of such national securities association subject to reduced membership requirements consistent with this subsection.

(3) DISCLOSURES REQUIRED.—Before effecting a transaction, a private placement broker shall disclose clearly and conspicuously, in writing, to all parties to the transaction as a result of the broker's activities—

(A) that the broker is acting as a private placement broker;

(B) the amount of any payment or anticipated payment for services rendered as a private placement broker in connection with such transaction;

(C) the person to whom any such payment is made; and

(D) any beneficial interest in the issuer, direct or indirect, of the private placement broker, of a member of the immediate family of the private placement broker, of an associated person of the private placement broker, or of a member of the immediate family of such associated person.

(4) PRIVATE PLACEMENT BROKER DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term "private placement broker" means a person that—

(A) receives transaction-based compensation—

(i) for effecting a transaction by—

(I) introducing an issuer of securities and a buyer of such securities in connection with the sale of a business effected as the sale of securities; or

(II) introducing an issuer of securities and a buyer of such securities in connection with the placement of securities in transactions that are exempt from registration requirements under the Securities Act of 1933; and

(ii) that is not with respect to—

(I) a class of publicly traded securities;

(II) the securities of an investment company (as defined in section 3 of the Investment Company Act of 1940); or

(III) a variable or equity-indexed annuity or other variable or equity-indexed life insurance product;

(B) with respect to a transaction for which such transaction-based compensation is received—

(i) does not handle or take possession of the funds or securities; and

(ii) does not engage in an activity that requires registration as an investment adviser under State or Federal law; and

(C) is not a finder as defined under subsection (q).

(q) FINDER SAFE HARBOR.—

(1) NONREGISTRATION.—A finder is exempt from the registration requirements of this Act.

(2) NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS.—A finder shall not be required to become a member of any national securities association.

(3) FINDER DEFINED.—In this subsection, the term "finder" means a person described in paragraphs (A) and (B) of subsection (p)(4) that—

(A) receives transaction-based compensation of equal to or less than $500,000 in any calendar year;

(B) receives transaction-based compensation in connection with transactions that result in a single issuer selling securities valued at equal to or less than $15,000,000 in any calendar year;

(C) receives transaction-based compensation in connection with transactions that result in any combination of issuers selling securities valued at equal to or less than $30,000,000 in any calendar year; or

(D) receives transaction-based compensation in connection with fewer than 16 transactions that are not part of the same offering or are otherwise unrelated in any calendar year.

* * * * * * *

VALIDITY OF CONTRACTS

SEC. 29. (a) Any condition, stipulation, or provision binding any person to waive compliance with any provision of this title or of any rule or regulation thereunder, or of any rule of a self-regulatory organization, shall be void.

(b) Every contract made in violation of any provision of this title or of any rule or regulation thereunder, and every contract (including any contract for listing a security on an exchange) heretofore or hereafter made, the performance of which involves the violation of, or the continuance of any relationship or practice in violation of, any provision of this title or any rule or regulation thereunder, shall be void (1) as regards the rights of any person who, in violation of any such provision, rule, or regulation, shall have made or engaged in the performance of any such contract, and (2) as regards the rights of any person who, not being a party to such contract, shall have acquired any right thereunder with actual knowledge of the facts by reason of which the making or performance of such contract was in violation of any such provision, rule, or regulation: *Provided,* (A) That no contract shall be void by reason of this subsection because of any violation of any rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to paragraph (3) of subsection (c) of section 15 of this title, and (B) that no contract shall be deemed to be void by reason of this subsection in any action maintained in reliance

upon this subsection, by any person to or for whom any broker or dealer sells, or from or for whom any broker or dealer purchases, a security in violation of any rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (c) of section 15 of this title, unless such action is brought within one year after the discovery that such sale or purchase involves such violation and within three years after such violation. The Commission may, in a rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to such paragraph (2) of such section 15(c), designate such rule or regulation, or portion thereof, as a rule or regulation, or portion thereof, a contract in violation of which shall not be void by reason of this subsection.

(c) Nothing in this title shall be construed (1) to affect the validity of any loan or extension of credit (or any extension or renewal thereof) made or of any lien created prior or subsequent to the enactment of this title, unless at the time of the making of such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or the creating of such lien, the person making such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or acquiring such lien shall have actual knowledge of facts by reason of which the making of such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or the acquisition of such lien is a violation of the provisions of this title or any rule or regulation thereunder, or (2) to afford a defense to the collection of any debt or obligation or the enforcement of any lien by any person who shall have acquired such debt, obligation, or lien in good faith for value and without actual knowledge of the violation of any provision of this title or any rule or regulation thereunder affecting the legality of such debt, obligation, or lien.

(d) Subsection (b) shall not apply to a contract made for a transaction if—

(1) the transaction is one in which the issuer engaged the services of a broker or dealer that is not registered under this Act with respect to such transaction;

(2) such issuer received a self-certification from such broker or dealer certifying that such broker or dealer is a registered private placement broker under section 15(p) or a finder under section 15(q); and

(3) the issuer either did not know that such self-certification was false or did not have a reasonable basis to believe that such self-certification was false.

* * * * * * *

SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

* * * * * * *

TITLE I—PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD

* * * * * * *

SEC. 103. AUDITING, QUALITY CONTROL, AND INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS AND RULES.

(a) AUDITING, QUALITY CONTROL, AND ETHICS STANDARDS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Board shall, by rule, establish, including, to the extent it determines appropriate, through adoption of standards proposed by 1 or more professional groups of accountants designated pursuant to paragraph (3)(A) or advisory groups convened pursuant to paragraph (4), and amend or otherwise modify or alter, such auditing and related attestation standards, such quality control standards, such ethics standards, and such independence standards to be used by registered public accounting firms in the preparation and issuance of audit reports, as required by this Act or the rules of the Commission, or as may be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(2) RULE REQUIREMENTS.—In carrying out paragraph (1), the Board—

(A) shall include in the auditing standards that it adopts, requirements that each registered public accounting firm shall—

(i) prepare, and maintain for a period of not less than 7 years, audit work papers, and other information related to any audit report, in sufficient detail to support the conclusions reached in such report;

(ii) provide a concurring or second partner review and approval of such audit report (and other related information), and concurring approval in its issuance, by a qualified person (as prescribed by the Board) associated with the public accounting firm, other than the person in charge of the audit, or by an independent reviewer (as prescribed by the Board); and

(iii) in each audit report for an issuer, describe the scope of the auditor's testing of the internal control structure and procedures of the issuer, required by section 404(b), and present (in such report or in a separate report)—

(I) the findings of the auditor from such testing;

(II) an evaluation of whether such internal control structure and procedures—

(aa) include maintenance of records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the issuer;

(bb) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the issuer are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the issuer; and

(III) a description, at a minimum, of material weaknesses in such internal controls, and of any material noncompliance found on the basis of such testing.

(B) shall include, in the quality control standards that it adopts with respect to the issuance of audit reports, re-

quirements for every registered public accounting firm relating to—

(i) monitoring of professional ethics and independence from issuers, brokers, and dealers on behalf of which the firm issues audit reports;

(ii) consultation within such firm on accounting and auditing questions;

(iii) supervision of audit work;

(iv) hiring, professional development, and advancement of personnel;

(v) the acceptance and continuation of engagements;

(vi) internal inspection; and

(vii) such other requirements as the Board may prescribe, subject to subsection (a)(1).

(3) AUTHORITY TO ADOPT OTHER STANDARDS.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—In carrying out this subsection, the Board—

(i) may adopt as its rules, subject to the terms of section 107, any portion of any statement of auditing standards or other professional standards that the Board determines satisfy the requirements of paragraph (1), and that were proposed by 1 or more professional groups of accountants that shall be designated or recognized by the Board, by rule, for such purpose, pursuant to this paragraph or 1 or more advisory groups convened pursuant to paragraph (4); and

(ii) notwithstanding clause (i), shall retain full authority to modify, supplement, revise, or subsequently amend, modify, or repeal, in whole or in part, any portion of any statement described in clause (i).

(B) INITIAL AND TRANSITIONAL STANDARDS.—The Board shall adopt standards described in subparagraph (A)(i) as initial or transitional standards, to the extent the Board determines necessary, prior to a determination of the Commission under section 101(d), and such standards shall be separately approved by the Commission at the time of that determination, without regard to the procedures required by section 107 that otherwise would apply to the approval of rules of the Board.

(C) TRANSITION PERIOD FOR EMERGING GROWTH COMPANIES.—Any rules of the Board requiring mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditor's report in which the auditor would be required to provide additional information about the audit and the financial statements of the issuer (auditor discussion and analysis) shall not apply to an audit of an emerging growth company, as defined in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Any additional rules adopted by the Board after the date of enactment of this subparagraph shall not apply to an audit of any emerging growth company, unless the Commission determines that the application of such additional requirements is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, after considering the protection of investors and whether the action will promote efficiency, competition, and capital formation.

(4) ADVISORY GROUPS.—The Board shall convene, or authorize its staff to convene, such expert advisory groups as may be appropriate, which may include practicing accountants and other experts, as well as representatives of other interested groups, subject to such rules as the Board may prescribe to prevent conflicts of interest, to make recommendations concerning the content (including proposed drafts) of auditing, quality control, ethics, independence, or other standards required to be established under this section.

(b) INDEPENDENCE STANDARDS AND RULES.—The Board shall establish such rules as may be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to implement, or as authorized under, title II of this Act.

(c) COOPERATION WITH DESIGNATED PROFESSIONAL GROUPS OF ACCOUNTANTS AND ADVISORY GROUPS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Board shall cooperate on an ongoing basis with professional groups of accountants designated under subsection (a)(3)(A) and advisory groups convened under subsection (a)(4) in the examination of the need for changes in any standards subject to its authority under subsection (a), recommend issues for inclusion on the agendas of such designated professional groups of accountants or advisory groups, and take such other steps as it deems appropriate to increase the effectiveness of the standard setting process.

(2) BOARD RESPONSES.—The Board shall respond in a timely fashion to requests from designated professional groups of accountants and advisory groups referred to in paragraph (1) for any changes in standards over which the Board has authority.

(d) EVALUATION OF STANDARD SETTING PROCESS.—The Board shall include in the annual report required by section 101(h) the results of its standard setting responsibilities during the period to which the report relates, including a discussion of the work of the Board with any designated professional groups of accountants and advisory groups described in paragraphs (3)(A) and (4) of subsection (a), and its pending issues agenda for future standard setting projects.

(e) AUDITOR INDEPENDENCE FOR CERTAIN PAST AUDITS OCCURRING BEFORE AN ISSUER IS A PUBLIC COMPANY.—With respect to an issuer that is a public company or an issuer that has filed a registration statement to become a public company, the auditor independence rules established by the Board with respect to audits occurring before the last fiscal year of the issuer completed before the issuer filed a registration statement to become a public company shall treat an auditor as independent if—

(1) the auditor is independent under standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants applicable to certified public accountants in United States; or

(2) with respect to a foreign issuer, the auditor is independent under comparable standards applicable to certified public accountants in the issuer's home country.

* * * * * * *

TITLE 31, UNITED STATES CODE

* * * * * * *

SUBTITLE IV—MONEY

* * * * * * *

CHAPTER 53—MONETARY TRANSACTIONS

* * * * * * *

SUBCHAPTER II—RECORDS AND REPORTS ON MONETARY INSTRUMENTS TRANSACTIONS

* * * * * * *

§ 5312. Definitions and application

(a) In this subchapter—

(1) "financial agency" means a person acting for a person (except for a country, a monetary or financial authority acting as a monetary or financial authority, or an international financial institution of which the United States Government is a member) as a financial institution, bailee, depository trustee, or agent, or acting in a similar way related to money, credit, securities, gold, a transaction in money, credit, securities or gold, or a service provided with respect to money, securities, futures, precious metals, stones and jewels, or value that substitutes for currency.

(2) "financial institution" means—

(A) an insured bank (as defined in section 3(h) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(h)));

(B) a commercial bank or trust company;

(C) a private banker;

(D) an agency or branch of a foreign bank in the United States;

(E) any credit union;

(F) a thrift institution;

(G) a broker or dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.) *with the exception of a private placement broker as defined in section 15(p)(4) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78o(p)(4))*;

(H) a broker or dealer in securities or commodities;

(I) an investment banker or investment company;

(J) a currency exchange, or a business engaged in the exchange of currency, funds, or value that substitutes for currency or funds;

(K) an issuer, redeemer, or cashier of travelers' checks, checks, money orders, or similar instruments;

(L) an operator of a credit card system;

(M) an insurance company;

(N) a dealer in precious metals, stones, or jewels;

(O) a pawnbroker;

(P) a loan or finance company;

(Q) a travel agency;

(R) a licensed sender of money or any other person who engages as a business in the transmission of currency, funds, or value that substitutes for currency, including any person who engages as a business in an informal money transfer system or any network of people who engage as a business in facilitating the transfer of money domestically or internationally outside of the conventional financial institutions system;

(S) a telegraph company;

(T) a business engaged in vehicle sales, including automobile, airplane, and boat sales;

(U) persons involved in real estate closings and settlements;

(V) the United States Postal Service;

(W) an agency of the United States Government or of a State or local government carrying out a duty or power of a business described in this paragraph;

(X) a casino, gambling casino, or gaming establishment with an annual gaming revenue of more than $1,000,000 which—

(i) is licensed as a casino, gambling casino, or gaming establishment under the laws of any State or any political subdivision of any State; or

(ii) is an Indian gaming operation conducted under or pursuant to the Indian Gaming Regulatory Act other than an operation which is limited to class I gaming (as defined in section 4(6) of such Act);

(Y) any business or agency which engages in any activity which the Secretary of the Treasury determines, by regulation, to be an activity which is similar to, related to, or a substitute for any activity in which any business described in this paragraph is authorized to engage; or

(Z) any other business designated by the Secretary whose cash transactions have a high degree of usefulness in criminal, tax, or regulatory matters.

(3) "monetary instruments" means—

(A) United States coins and currency;

(B) as the Secretary may prescribe by regulation, coins and currency of a foreign country, travelers' checks, bearer negotiable instruments, bearer investment securities, bearer securities, stock on which title is passed on delivery, and similar material;

(C) as the Secretary of the Treasury shall provide by regulation for purposes of sections 5316 and 5331, checks, drafts, notes, money orders, and other similar instruments which are drawn on or by a foreign financial institution and are not in bearer form; and

(D) as the Secretary shall provide by regulation, value that substitutes for any monetary instrument described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C).

(4) NONFINANCIAL TRADE OR BUSINESS.—The term "nonfinancial trade or business" means any trade or business other than a financial institution that is subject to the reporting requirements of section 5313 and regulations prescribed under such section.

(5) "person", in addition to its meaning under section 1 of title 1, includes a trustee, a representative of an estate and, when the Secretary prescribes, a governmental entity.

(6) "United States" means the States of the United States, the District of Columbia, and, when the Secretary prescribes by regulation, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, a territory or possession of the United States, or a military or diplomatic establishment.

(b) In this subchapter—

(1) "domestic financial agency" and "domestic financial institution" apply to an action in the United States of a financial agency or institution.

(2) "foreign financial agency" and "foreign financial institution" apply to an action outside the United States of a financial agency or institution.

[(c) ADDITIONAL DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this subchapter, the following definitions shall apply:

[(1) CERTAIN INSTITUTIONS INCLUDED IN DEFINITION.—The term "financial institution" (as defined in subsection (a)) includes the following:

[(A) Any futures commission merchant, commodity trading advisor, or commodity pool operator registered, or required to register, under the Commodity Exchange Act.]

(c) ADDITIONAL CLARIFICATION.—The term "financial institution" (as defined in subsection (a))—

(1) includes any futures commission merchant, commodity trading advisor, or commodity pool operator registered, or required to register, under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.); and

(2) does not include a funding portal, as that term is defined in section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)).

* * * * * * *

INVESTMENT ADVISERS ACT OF 1940

TITLE II—INVESTMENT ADVISERS

* * * * * * *

REGISTRATION OF INVESTMENT ADVISERS

SEC. 203. (a) Except as provided in subsection (b) and section 203A, it shall be unlawful for any investment adviser, unless registered under this section, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in connection with his or its business as an investment adviser.

(b) The provisions of subsection (a) shall not apply to—

(1) any investment adviser, other than an investment adviser who acts as an investment adviser to any private fund, all of whose clients are residents of the State within which such investment adviser maintains his or its principal office and place of business, and who does not furnish advice or issue

analyses or reports with respect to securities listed or admitted to unlisted trading privileges on any national securities exchange;

(2) any investment adviser whose only clients are insurance companies;

(3) any investment adviser that is a foreign private adviser;

(4) any investment adviser that is a charitable organization, as defined in section 3(c)(10)(D) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, or is a trustee, director, officer, employee, or volunteer of such a charitable organization acting within the scope of such person's employment or duties with such organization, whose advice, analyses, or reports are provided only to one or more of the following:

(A) any such charitable organization;

(B) a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940; or

(C) a trust or other donative instrument described in section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, or the trustees, administrators, settlors (or potential settlors), or beneficiaries of any such trust or other instrument;

(5) any plan described in section 414(e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, any person or entity eligible to establish and maintain such a plan under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, or any trustee, director, officer, or employee of or volunteer for any such plan or person, if such person or entity, acting in such capacity, provides investment advice exclusively to, or with respect to, any plan, person, or entity or any company, account, or fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940;

(6)(A) any investment adviser that is registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission as a commodity trading advisor whose business does not consist primarily of acting as an investment adviser, as defined in section 202(a)(11) of this title, and that does not act as an investment adviser to—

(i) an investment company registered under title I of this Act; or

(ii) a company which has elected to be a business development company pursuant to section 54 of title I of this Act and has not withdrawn its election; or

(B) any investment adviser that is registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission as a commodity trading advisor and advises a private fund, provided that, if after the date of enactment of the Private Fund Investment Advisers Registration Act of 2010, the business of the advisor should become predominately the provision of securities-related advice, then such adviser shall register with the Commission;

(7) any investment adviser, other than any entity that has elected to be regulated or is regulated as a business development company pursuant to section 54 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–54), who solely advises—

(A) small business investment companies that are licensees under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958;

(B) entities that have received from the Small Business Administration notice to proceed to qualify for a license as a small business investment company under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, which notice or license has not been revoked; or

(C) applicants that are affiliated with 1 or more licensed small business investment companies described in subparagraph (A) and that have applied for another license under the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, which application remains pending; or

(8) any investment adviser, other than an entity that has elected to be regulated or is regulated as a business development company pursuant to section 54 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–53), who solely advises—

(A) rural business investment companies (as defined in section 384A of the Consolidated Farm and Rural Development Act (7 U.S.C. 2009cc)); or

(B) companies that have submitted to the Secretary of Agriculture an application in accordance with section 384D(b) of the Consolidated Farm and Rural Development Act (7 U.S.C. 2009cc–3(b)) that—

(i) have received from the Secretary of Agriculture a letter of conditions, which has not been revoked; or

(ii) are affiliated with 1 or more rural business investment companies described in subparagraph (A).

(c)(1) An investment adviser, or any person who presently contemplates becoming an investment adviser, may be registered by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form and containing such of the following information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors:

(A) the name and form of organization under which the investment adviser engages or intends to engage in business; the name of the State or other sovereign power under which such investment adviser is organized; the location of his or its principal office, principal place of business, and branch offices, if any; the names and addresses of his or its partners, officers, directors, and persons performing similar functions or, if such an investment adviser be an individual, of such individual; and the number of his or its employees;

(B) the education, the business affiliations for the past ten years, and the present business affiliations of such investment adviser and of his or its partners, officers, directors, and persons performing similar functions and of any controlling person thereof;

(C) the nature of the business of such investment adviser, including the manner of giving advice and rendering analyses or reports;

(D) a balance sheet certified by an independent public accountant and other financial statements (which shall, as the Commission specifies, be certified);

(E) the nature and scope of the authority of such investment adviser with respect to clients' funds and accounts;

(F) the basis or bases upon which such investment adviser is compensated;

(G) whether such investment adviser, or any person associated with such investment adviser, is subject to any disqualification which would be a basis for denial, suspension, or revocation of registration of such investment adviser under the provisions of subsection (e) of this section; and

(H) a statement as to whether the principal business of such investment adviser consists or is to consist of acting as investment adviser and a statement as to whether a substantial part of the business of such investment adviser, consists or is to consist of rendering investment supervisory services.

(2) Within forty-five days of the date of the filing of such application (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents) the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant such registration; or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred twenty days of the date of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for up to ninety days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant such registration if the Commission finds that the requirements of this section are satisfied and that the applicant is not prohibited from registering as an investment adviser under section 203A. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such a finding or if it finds that if the applicant were so registered, its registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under subsection (e) of this section.

(d) Any provision of this title (other than subsection (a) of this section) which prohibits any act, practice, or course of business if the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce are used in connection therewith shall also prohibit any such act, practice, or course of business by any investment adviser registered pursuant to this section or any person acting on behalf of such an investment adviser, irrespective of any use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in connection therewith.

(e) The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoke the registration of any investment adviser if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such investment adviser, or any person associated with such investment adviser, whether prior to or subsequent to becoming so associated—

(1) has willfully made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with the Commission under this title, or in any proceeding before the Commission with respect to registration, any statement which was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any ma-

terial fact, or has omitted to state in any such application or report any material fact which is required to be stated therein.

(2) has been convicted within ten years preceding the filing of any application for registration or at any time thereafter of any felony or misdemeanor or of a substantially equivalent crime by a foreign court of competent jurisdiction which the Commission finds—

(A) involves the purchase or sale of any security, the taking of a false oath, the making of a false report, bribery, perjury, burglary, any substantially equivalent activity however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government, or conspiracy to commit any such offense;

(B) arises out of the conduct of the business of a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, investment adviser, bank, insurance company, government securities broker, government securities dealer, fiduciary, transfer agent, credit rating agency, foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act or any substantially equivalent statute or regulation;

(C) involves the larceny, theft, robbery, extortion, forgery, counterfeiting, fraudulent concealment, embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, or misappropriation of funds or securities or substantially equivalent activity however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government; or

(D) involves the violation of section 152, 1341, 1342, or 1343 or chapter 25 or 47 of title 18, United States Code, or a violation of substantially equivalent foreign statute.

(3) has been convicted during the 10-year period preceding the date of filing of any application for registration, or at any time thereafter, of—

(A) any crime that is punishable by imprisonment for 1 or more years, and that is not described in paragraph (2); or

(B) a substantially equivalent crime by a foreign court of competent jurisdiction.

(4) is permanently or temporarily enjoined by order, judgment, or decree of any court of competent jurisdiction, including any foreign court of competent jurisdiction, from acting as an investment adviser, underwriter, broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, transfer agent, credit rating agency, foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act or any substantially equivalent statute or regulation, or as an affiliated person or employee of any investment company, bank, insurance company, foreign entity substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act or any substantially equivalent statute or regulation, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice

in connection with any such activity, or in connection with the purchase or sale of any security.

(5) has willfully violated any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, this title, the Commodity Exchange Act, or the rules or regulations under any such statutes or any rule of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or is unable to comply with any such provision.

(6) has willfully aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured the violation by any other person of any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, this title, the Commodity Exchange Act, the rules or regulations under any of such statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or has failed reasonably to supervise, with a view to preventing violations of the provisions of such statutes, rules, and regulations, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision. For the purposes of this paragraph no person shall be deemed to have failed reasonably to supervise any person, if—

(A) there have been established procedures, and a system for applying such procedures, which would reasonably be expected to prevent and detect, insofar as practicable, any such violation by such other person, and

(B) such person has reasonably discharged the duties and obligations incumbent upon him by reason of such procedures and system without reasonable cause to believe that such procedures and system were not being complied with.

(7) is subject to any order of the Commission barring or suspending the right of the person to be associated with an investment adviser;

(8) has been found by a foreign financial regulatory authority to have—

(A) made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with a foreign securities authority, or in any proceeding before a foreign securities authority with respect to registration, any statement that was at the time and in light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any application or report to a foreign securities authority any material fact that is required to be stated therein;

(B) violated any foreign statute or regulation regarding transactions in securities or contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market or any board of trade; or

(C) aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured the violation by any other person of any foreign statute or regulation regarding transactions in securities or contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market or any board of trade, or has been found, by the foreign finanical regulatory authority, to have failed reasonably to supervise, with a view to preventing violations of statutory pro-

visions, and rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision; or

(9) is subject to any final order of a State securities commission (or any agency or officer performing like functions), State authority that supervises or examines banks, savings associations, or credit unions, State insurance commission (or any agency or office performing like functions), an appropriate Federal banking agency (as defined in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(q))), or the National Credit Union Administration, that—

(A) bars such person from association with an entity regulated by such commission, authority, agency, or officer, or from engaging in the business of securities, insurance, banking, savings association activities, or credit union activities; or

(B) constitutes a final order based on violations of any laws or regulations that prohibit fraudulent, manipulative, or deceptive conduct.

(f) The Commission, by order, shall censure or place limitations on the activities of any person associated, seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated with an investment adviser, or suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months or bar any such person from being associated with an investment adviser, broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, transfer agent, or nationally recognized statistical rating organization, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed or omitted any act or omission enumerated in paragraph (1), (5), (6), (8), or (9) of subsection (e) or has been convicted of any offense specified in paragraph (2) or (3) of subsection (e) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this subsection, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in paragraph (4) of subsection (e). It shall be unlawful for any person as to whom such an order suspending or barring him from being associated with an investment adviser is in effect willfully to become, or to be, associated with an investment adviser without the consent of the Commission, and it shall be unlawful for any investment adviser to permit such a person to become, or remain, a person associated with him without the consent of the Commission, if such investment adviser knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care, should have known, of such order.

(g) Any successor to the business of an investment adviser registered under this section shall be deemed likewise registered hereunder, if within thirty days from its succession to such business it shall file an application for registration under this section, unless and until the Commission, pursuant to subsection (c) or subsection (e) of this section, shall deny registration to or revoke or suspend the registration of such successor.

(h) Any person registered under this section may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission finds necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Com-

mission. If the Commission finds that any person registered under this section, or who has pending an application for registration filed under this section, is no longer in existence, is not engaged in business as an investment adviser, or is prohibited from registering as an investment adviser under section 203A, the Commission shall by order cancel the registration of such person.

(i) MONEY PENALTIES IN ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEEDINGS.—

(1) AUTHORITY OF COMMISSION.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—In any proceeding instituted pursuant to subsection (e) or (f) against any person, the Commission may impose a civil penalty if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such penalty is in the public interest and that such person—

(i) has willfully violated any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, or this title, or the rules or regulations thereunder;

(ii) has willfully aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured such a violation by any other person;

(iii) has willfully made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with the Commission under this title, or in any proceeding before the Commission with respect to registration, any statement which was, at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such application or report any material fact which was required to be stated therein; or

(iv) has failed reasonably to supervise, within the meaning of subsection (e)(6), with a view to preventing violations of the provisions of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision;

(B) CEASE-AND-DESIST PROCEEDINGS.—In any proceeding instituted pursuant to subsection (k) against any person, the Commission may impose a civil penalty if the Commission finds, on the record, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such person—

(i) is violating or has violated any provision of this title, or any rule or regulation issued under this title; or

(ii) is or was a cause of the violation of any provision of this title, or any rule or regulation issued under this title.

(2) MAXIMUM AMOUNT OF PENALTY.—

(A) FIRST TIER.—The maximum amount of penalty for each act or omission described in paragraph (1) shall be $5,000 for a natural person or $50,000 for any other person.

(B) SECOND TIER.—Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), the maximum amount of penalty for each such act or omission shall be $50,000 for a natural person or $250,000 for

any other person if the act or omission described in paragraph (1) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement.

(C) THIRD TIER.—Notwithstanding subparagraphs (A) and (B), the maximum amount of penalty for each such act or omission shall be $100,000 for a natural person or $500,000 for any other person if—

(i) the act or omission described in paragraph (1) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement; and

(ii) such act or omission directly or indirectly resulted in substantial losses or created a significant risk of substantial losses to other persons or resulted in substantial pecuniary gain to the person who committed the act or omission.

(3) DETERMINATION OF PUBLIC INTEREST.—In considering under this section whether a penalty is in the public interest, the Commission may consider—

(A) whether the act or omission for which such penalty is assessed involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement;

(B) the harm to other persons resulting either directly or indirectly from such act or omission;

(C) the extent to which any person was unjustly enriched, taking into account any restitution made to persons injured by such behavior;

(D) whether such person previously has been found by the Commission, another appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to have violated the Federal securities laws, State securities laws, or the rules of a self-regulatory organization, has been enjoined by a court of competent jurisdiction from violations of such laws or rules, or has been convicted by a court of competent jurisdiction of violations of such laws or of any felony or misdemeanor described in section 203(e)(2) of this title;

(E) the need to deter such person and other persons from committing such acts or omissions; and

(F) such other matters as justice may require.

(4) EVIDENCE CONCERNING ABILITY TO PAY.—In any proceeding in which the Commission may impose a penalty under this section, a respondent may present evidence of the respondent's ability to pay such penalty. The Commission may, in its discretion, consider such evidence in determining whether such penalty is in the public interest. Such evidence may relate to the extent of such person's ability to continue in business and the collectability of a penalty, taking into account any other claims of the United States or third parties upon such person's assets and the amount of such person's assets.

(j) AUTHORITY TO ENTER AN ORDER REQUIRING AN ACCOUNTING AND DISGORGEMENT.—In any proceeding in which the Commission may impose a penalty under this section, the Commission may enter an order requiring accounting and disgorgement, including reasonable interest. The Commission is authorized to adopt rules, regulations, and orders concerning payments to investors, rates of

interest, periods of accrual, and such other matters as it deems appropriate to implement this subsection.

(k) CEASE-AND-DESIST PROCEEDINGS.—

(1) AUTHORITY OF THE COMMISSION.—If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that any person is violating, has violated, or is about to violate any provision of this title, or any rule or regulation thereunder, the Commission may publish its findings and enter an order requiring such person, and any other person that is, was, or would be a cause of the violation, due to an act or omission the person knew or should have known would contribute to such violation, to cease and desist from committing or causing such violation and any future violation of the same provision, rule, or regulation. Such order may, in addition to requiring a person to cease and desist from committing or causing a violation, require such person to comply, or to take steps to effect compliance, with such provision, rule, or regulation, upon such terms and conditions and within such time as the Commission may specify in such order. Any such order may, as the Commission deems appropriate, require future compliance or steps to effect future compliance, either permanently or for such period of time as the Commission may specify, with such provision, rule, or regulation with respect to any security, any issuer, or any other person.

(2) HEARING.—The notice instituting proceedings pursuant to paragraph (1) shall fix a hearing date not earlier than 30 days nor later than 60 days after service of the notice unless an earlier or a later date is set by the Commission with the consent of any respondent so served.

(3) TEMPORARY ORDER.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—Whenever the Commission determines that the alleged violation or threatened violation specified in the notice instituting proceedings pursuant to paragraph (1), or the continuation thereof, is likely to result in significant dissipation or conversion of assets, significant harm to investors, or substantial harm to the public interest, including, but not limited to, losses to the Securities Investor Protection Corporation, prior to the completion of the proceedings, the Commission may enter a temporary order requiring the respondent to cease and desist from the violation or threatened violation and to take such action to prevent the violation or threatened violation and to prevent dissipation or conversion of assets, significant harm to investors, or substantial harm to the public interest as the Commission deems appropriate pending completion of such proceedings. Such an order shall be entered only after notice and opportunity for a hearing, unless the Commission, notwithstanding section 211(c) of this title, determines that notice and hearing prior to entry would be impracticable or contrary to the public interest. A temporary order shall become effective upon service upon the respondent and, unless set aside, limited, or suspended by the Commission or a court of competent jurisdiction, shall remain effective and enforceable pending the completion of the proceedings.

(B) APPLICABILITY.—This paragraph shall apply only to a respondent that acts, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct acted, as a broker, dealer, investment adviser, investment company, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, or transfer agent, or is, or was at the time of the alleged misconduct, an associated person of, or a person seeking to become associated with, any of the foregoing.

(4) REVIEW OF TEMPORARY ORDERS.—

(A) COMMISSION REVIEW.—At any time after the respondent has been served with a temporary cease-and-desist order pursuant to paragraph (3), the respondent may apply to the Commission to have the order set aside, limited, or suspended. If the respondent has been served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing, the respondent may, within 10 days after the date on which the order was served, request a hearing on such application and the Commission shall hold a hearing and render a decision on such application at the earliest possible time.

(B) JUDICIAL REVIEW.—Within—

(i) 10 days after the date the respondent was served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered with a prior Commission hearing, or

(ii) 10 days after the Commission renders a decision on an application and hearing under subparagraph (A), with respect to any temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing,

the respondent may apply to the United States district court for the district in which the respondent resides or has its principal office or place of business, or for the District of Columbia, for an order setting aside, limiting, or suspending the effectiveness or enforcement of the order, and the court shall have jurisdiction to enter such an order. A respondent served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing may not apply to the court except after hearing and decision by the Commission on the respondent's application under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph.

(C) NO AUTOMATIC STAY OF TEMPORARY ORDER.—The commencement of proceedings under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph shall not, unless specifically ordered by the court, operate as a stay of the Commission's order.

(D) EXCLUSIVE REVIEW.—Section 213 of this title shall not apply to a temporary order entered pursuant to this section.

(5) AUTHORITY TO ENTER AN ORDER REQUIRING AN ACCOUNTING AND DISGORGEMENT.—In any cease-and-desist proceeding under paragraph (1), the Commission may enter an order requiring accounting and disgorgement, including reasonable interest. The Commission is authorized to adopt rules, regulations, and orders concerning payments to investors, rates of interest, periods of accrual, and such other matters as it deems appropriate to implement this subsection.

(l) EXEMPTION OF VENTURE CAPITAL FUND ADVISERS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—No investment adviser that acts as an investment adviser solely to 1 or more venture capital funds shall be subject to the registration requirements of this title with respect to the provision of investment advice relating to a venture capital fund. Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Commission shall issue final rules to define the term "venture capital fund" for purposes of this subsection. The Commission shall require such advisers to maintain such records and provide to the Commission such annual or other reports as the Commission determines necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(2) ADVISERS OF SBICS.—For purposes of this subsection, a venture capital fund includes an entity described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C) of subsection (b)(7) (other than an entity that has elected to be regulated or is regulated as a business development company pursuant to section 54 of the Investment Company Act of 1940).

(3) ADVISERS OF RBICS.—For purposes of this subsection, a venture capital fund includes an entity described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of subsection (b)(8) (other than an entity that has elected to be regulated as a business development company pursuant to section 54 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–53)).

(m) EXEMPTION OF AND REPORTING BY CERTAIN PRIVATE FUND ADVISERS.—

(1) IN GENERAL.—The Commission shall provide an exemption from the registration requirements under this section to any investment adviser of private funds, if each of such investment adviser acts solely as an adviser to private funds and has assets under management in the United States of less than $150,000,000.

(2) REPORTING.—The Commission shall require investment advisers exempted by reason of this subsection to maintain such records and provide to the Commission such annual or other reports as the Commission determines necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3) ADVISERS OF SBICS.—For purposes of this subsection, the assets under management of a private fund that is an entity described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C) of subsection (b)(7) (other than an entity that has elected to be regulated or is regulated as a business development company pursuant to section 54 of the Investment Company Act of 1940) shall be excluded from the limit set forth in paragraph (1).

(4) ADVISERS OF RBICS.—For purposes of this subsection, the assets under management of a private fund that is an entity described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of subsection (b)(8) (other than an entity that has elected to be regulated or is regulated as a business development company pursuant to section 54 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–53)) shall be excluded from the limit set forth in paragraph (1).

(5) INFLATION ADJUSTMENT.—The Commission shall adjust the dollar amount described under paragraph (1)—

(A) upon enactment of this paragraph, to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the Department of Labor between the date of enactment of the Private Fund Investment Advisers Registration Act of 2010 and the date of enactment of this paragraph; and

(B) annually thereafter, to reflect the change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the Department of Labor.

(n) REGISTRATION AND EXAMINATION OF MID-SIZED PRIVATE FUND ADVISERS.—In prescribing regulations to carry out the requirements of this section with respect to investment advisers acting as investment advisers to mid-sized private funds, the Commission shall take into account the size, governance, and investment strategy of such funds to determine whether they pose systemic risk, and shall provide for registration and examination procedures with respect to the investment advisers of such funds which reflect the level of systemic risk posed by such funds.

* * * * * * *

INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940

TITLE I—INVESTMENT COMPANIES

* * * * * * *

DEFINITION OF INVESTMENT COMPANY

SEC. 3. (a)(1) When used in this title, "investment company" means any issuer which—

(A) is or holds itself out as being engaged primarily, or proposes to engage primarily, in the business of investing, reinvesting, or trading in securities;

(B) is engaged or proposes to engage in the business of issuing face-amount certificates of the installment type, or has been engaged in such business and has any such certificate outstanding; or

(C) is engaged or proposes to engage in the business of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities, and owns or proposes to acquire investment securities having a value exceeding 40 per centum of the value of such issuer's total assets (exclusive of Government securities and cash items) on an unconsolidated basis.

(2) As used in this section, "investment securities" includes all securities except (A) Government securities, (B) securities issued by employees' securities companies, and (C) securities issued by majority-owned subsidiaries of the owner which (i) are not investment companies, and (ii) are not relying on the exception from the definition of investment company in paragraph (1) or (7) of subsection (c).

(b) Notwithstanding paragraph (1)(C) of subsection (a), none of the following persons is an investment company within the meaning of this title:

(1) Any issuer primarily engaged, directly or through a wholly-owned subsidiary or subsidiaries, in a business or businesses

other than that of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities.

(2) Any issuer which the Commission, upon application by such issuer, finds and by order declares to be primarily engaged in a business or businesses other than that of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities either directly or (A) through majority-owned subsidiaries or (B) through controlled companies conducting similar types of businesses. The filing of an application under this paragraph in good faith by an issuer other than a registered investment company shall exempt the applicant for a period of sixty days from all provisions of this title applicable to investment companies as such. For cause shown, the Commission by order may extend such period of exemption for an additional period or periods. Whenever the Commission, upon its own motion or upon application, finds that the circumstances which gave rise to the issuance of an order granting an application under this paragraph no longer exist, the Commission shall by order revoke such order.

(3) Any issuer all the outstanding securities of which (other than short-term paper and directors' qualifying shares) are directly or indirectly owned by a company excepted from the definition of investment company by paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection.

(c) Notwithstanding subsection (a), none of the following persons is an investment company within the meaning of this title:

(1) Any issuer whose outstanding securities (other than short-term paper) are beneficially owned by not more than one hundred persons (or, in the case of a qualifying venture capital fund, ⟦250 persons⟧ *600 persons*) and which is not making and does not presently propose to make a public offering of its securities. Such issuer shall be deemed to be an investment company for purposes of the limitations set forth in subparagraphs (A)(i) and (B)(i) of section 12(d)(1) governing the purchase or other acquisition by such issuer of any security issued by any registered investment company and the sale of any security issued by any registered open-end investment company to any such issuer. For purposes of this paragraph:

(A) Beneficial ownership by a company shall be deemed to be beneficial ownership by one person, except that, if the company owns 10 per centum or more of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, and is or, but for the exception provided for in this paragraph or paragraph (7), would be an investment company, the beneficial ownership shall be deemed to be that of the holders of such company's outstanding securities (other than short-term paper).

(B) Beneficial ownership by any person who acquires securities or interests in securities of an issuer described in the first sentence of this paragraph shall be deemed to be beneficial ownership by the person from whom such transfer was made, pursuant to such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes fairly intended by the

policy and provisions of this title, where the transfer was caused by legal separation, divorce, death, or other involuntary event.

(C)(i) The term "qualifying venture capital fund" means a venture capital fund that has not more than [$10,000,000] *$150,000,000* in aggregate capital contributions and uncalled committed capital, with such dollar amount to be indexed for inflation once every 5 years by the Commission, beginning from a measurement made by the Commission on a date selected by the Commission, rounded to the nearest $1,000,000.

(ii) The term "venture capital fund" has the meaning given the term in section 275.203(l)–1 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, or any successor regulation.

(2)(A) Any person primarily engaged in the business of underwriting and distributing securities issued by other persons, selling securities to customers, acting as broker, and acting as market intermediary, or any one or more of such activities, whose gross income normally is derived principally from such business and related activities.

(B) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) the term "market intermediary" means any person that regularly holds itself out as being willing contemporaneously to engage in, and that is regularly engaged in, the business of entering into transactions on both sides of the market for a financial contract or one or more such financial contracts; and

(ii) the term "financial contract" means any arrangement that—

(I) takes the form of an individually negotiated contract, agreement, or option to buy, sell, lend, swap, or repurchase, or other similar individually negotiated transaction commonly entered into by participants in the financial markets;

(II) is in respect of securities, commodities, currencies, interest or other rates, other measures of value, or any other financial or economic interest similar in purpose or function to any of the foregoing; and

(III) is entered into in response to a request from a counter party for a quotation, or is otherwise entered into and structured to accommodate the objectives of the counter party to such arrangement.

(3) Any bank or insurance company; any savings and loan association, building and loan association, cooperative bank, homestead association, or similar institution, or any receiver, conservator, liquidator, liquidating agent, or similar official or person thereof or therefor; or any common trust fund or similar fund maintained by a bank exclusively for the collective investment and reinvestment of moneys contributed thereto by the bank in its capacity as a trustee, executor, administrator, or guardian, if—

(A) such fund is employed by the bank solely as an aid to the administration of trusts, estates, or other accounts created and maintained for a fiduciary purpose;

(B) except in connection with the ordinary advertising of the bank's fiduciary services, interests in such fund are not—

(i) advertised; or

(ii) offered for sale to the general public; and

(C) fees and expenses charged by such fund are not in contravention of fiduciary principles established under applicable Federal or State law.

(4) Any person substantially all of whose business is confined to making small loans, industrial banking, or similar businesses.

(5) Any person who is not engaged in the business of issuing redeemable securities, face-amount certificates of the installment type or periodic payment plan certificates, and who is primarily engaged in one or more of the following businesses: (A) Purchasing or otherwise acquiring notes, drafts, acceptances, open accounts receivable, and other obligations representing part or all of the sales price of merchandise, insurance, and services; (B) making loans to manufacturers, wholesalers, and retailers of, and to prospective purchasers of, specified merchandise, insurance, and services; and (C) purchasing or otherwise acquiring mortgages and other liens on and interests in real estate.

(6) Any company primarily engaged, directly or through majority-owned subsidiaries, in one or more of the businesses described in paragraphs (3), (4), and (5), or in one or more of such businesses (from which not less than 25 centum of such company's gross income during its last fiscal year was derived) together with an additional business or businesses other than investing, reinvesting, owning, holding, or trading in securities.

(7)(A) Any issuer, the outstanding securities of which are owned exclusively by persons who, at the time of acquisition of such securities, are qualified purchasers, and which is not making and does not at that time propose to make a public offering of such securities. Securities that are owned by persons who received the securities from a qualified purchaser as a gift or bequest, or in a case in which the transfer was caused by legal separation, divorce, death, or other involuntary event, shall be deemed to be owned by a qualified purchaser, subject to such rules, regulations, and orders as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), an issuer is within the exception provided by this paragraph if—

(i) in addition to qualified purchasers, outstanding securities of that issuer are beneficially owned by not more than 100 persons who are not qualified purchasers, if—

(I) such persons acquired any portion of the securities of such issuer on or before September 1, 1996; and

(II) at the time at which such persons initially acquired the securities of such issuer, the issuer was excepted by paragraph (1); and

(ii) prior to availing itself of the exception provided by this paragraph—

(I) such issuer has disclosed to each beneficial owner, as determined under paragraph (1), that future investors will be limited to qualified purchasers, and that ownership in such issuer is no longer limited to not more than 100 persons; and

(II) concurrently with or after such disclosure, such issuer has provided each beneficial owner, as determined under paragraph (1), with a reasonable opportunity to redeem any part or all of their interests in the issuer, notwithstanding any agreement to the contrary between the issuer and such persons, for that person's proportionate share of the issuer's net assets.

(C) Each person that elects to redeem under subparagraph (B)(ii)(II) shall receive an amount in cash equal to that person's proportionate share of the issuer's net assets, unless the issuer elects to provide such person with the option of receiving, and such person agrees to receive, all or a portion of such person's share in assets of the issuer. If the issuer elects to provide such persons with such an opportunity, disclosure concerning such opportunity shall be made in the disclosure required by subparagraph (B)(ii)(I).

(D) An issuer that is excepted under this paragraph shall nonetheless be deemed to be an investment company for purposes of the limitations set forth in subparagraphs (A)(i) and (B)(i) of section 12(d)(1) relating to the purchase or other acquisition by such issuer of any security issued by any registered investment company and the sale of any security issued by any registered open-end investment company to any such issuer.

(E) For purposes of determining compliance with this paragraph and paragraph (1), an issuer that is otherwise excepted under this paragraph and an issuer that is otherwise excepted under paragraph (1) shall not be treated by the Commission as being a single issuer for purposes of determining whether the outstanding securities of the issuer excepted under paragraph (1) are beneficially owned by not more than 100 persons or whether the outstanding securities of the issuer excepted under this paragraph are owned by persons that are not qualified purchasers. Nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to establish that a person is a bona fide qualified purchaser for purposes of this paragraph or a bona fide beneficial owner for purposes of paragraph (1).

(8)

(9) Any person substantially all of whose business consists of owning or holding oil, gas, or other mineral royalties or leases, or fractional interests therein, or certificates of interest or participation in or investment contracts relative to such royalties, leases, or fractional interests.

(10)(A) Any company organized and operated exclusively for religious, educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, or reformatory purposes—

(i) no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual; or

(ii) which is or maintains a fund described in subparagraph (B).

(B) For the purposes of subparagraph (A)(ii), a fund is described in this subparagraph if such fund is a pooled income fund, collective trust fund, collective investment fund, or similar fund maintained by a charitable organization exclusively for the collective investment and reinvestment of one or more of the following:

(i) assets of the general endowment fund or other funds of one or more charitable organizations;

(ii) assets of a pooled income fund;

(iii) assets contributed to a charitable organization in exchange for the issuance of charitable gift annuities;

(iv) assets of a charitable remainder trust or of any other trust, the remainder interests of which are irrevocably dedicated to any charitable organization;

(v) assets of a charitable lead trust;

(vi) assets of a trust, the remainder interests of which are revocably dedicated to or for the benefit of 1 or more charitable organizations, if the ability to revoke the dedication is limited to circumstances involving—

(I) an adverse change in the financial circumstances of a settlor or an income beneficiary of the trust;

(II) a change in the identity of the charitable organization or organizations having the remainder interest, provided that the new beneficiary is also a charitable organization; or

(III) both the changes described in subclauses (I) and (II);

(vii) assets of a trust not described in clauses (i) through (v), the remainder interests of which are revocably dedicated to a charitable organization, subject to subparagraph (C); or

(viii) such assets as the Commission may prescribe by rule, regulation, or order in accordance with section 6(c).

(C) A fund that contains assets described in clause (vii) of subparagraph (B) shall be excluded from the definition of an investment company for a period of 3 years after the date of enactment of this subparagraph, but only if—

(i) such assets were contributed before the date which is 60 days after the date of enactment of this subparagraph; and

(ii) such assets are commingled in the fund with assets described in one or more of clauses (i) through (vi) and (viii) of subparagraph (B).

(D) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) a trust or fund is "maintained" by a charitable organization if the organization serves as a trustee or administrator of the trust or fund or has the power to remove the trustees or administrators of the trust or fund and to designate new trustees or administrators;

(ii) the term "pooled income fund" has the same meaning as in section 642(c)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986;

(iii) the term "charitable organization" means an organization described in paragraphs (1) through (5) of section

170(c) or section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986;

(iv) the term "charitable lead trust" means a trust described in section 170(f)(2)(B), 2055(e)(2)(B), or 2522(c)(2)(B) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986;

(v) the term "charitable remainder trust" means a charitable remainder annuity trust or a charitable remainder unitrust, as those terms are defined in section 664(d) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986; and

(vi) the term "charitable gift annuity" means an annuity issued by a charitable organization that is described in section 501(m)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986.

(11) Any employee's stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing trust which meets the requirements for qualification under section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986; or any governmental plan described in section 3(a)(2)(C) of the Securities Act of 1933; or any collective trust fund maintained by a bank consisting solely of assets of one or more of such trusts, government plans, or church plans, companies or accounts that are excluded from the definition of an investment company under paragraph (14) of this subsection; or any separate account the assets of which are derived solely from (A) contributions under pension or profit-sharing plans which meet the requirements of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 or the requirements for deduction of the employer's contribution under section 404(a)(2) of such Code, (B) contributions under governmental plans in connection with which interests, participations, or securities are exempted from the registration provisions of section 5 of the Securities Act of 1933 by section 3(a)(2)(C) of such Act, and (C) advances made by an insurance company in connection with the operation of such separate account.

(12) Any voting trust the assets of which consist exclusively of securities of a single issuer which is not an investment company.

(13) Any security holders' protective committee or similar issuer having outstanding and issuing no securities other than certificates of deposit and short-term paper.

(14) Any church plan described in section 414(e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, if, under any such plan, no part of the assets may be used for, or diverted to, purposes other than the exclusive benefit of plan participants or beneficiaries, or any company or account that is—

(A) established by a person that is eligible to establish and maintain such a plan under section 414(e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986; and

(B) substantially all of the activities of which consist of—

(i) managing or holding assets contributed to such church plans or other assets which are permitted to be commingled with the assets of church plans under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986; or

(ii) administering or providing benefits pursuant to church plans.

* * * * * * *

MINORITY VIEWS

H.R. 2799 would significantly weaken investor protections in several ways. First, it would expand the number of companies that are currently able to offer securities without needing to register with the SEC or provide important investor-focused disclosures. Provisions in Division A such as Title VIII (Expand WKSI Eligibility), Title IX (Smaller Reporting Company, Accelerated Filer, and Large Accelerated Filer Thresholds) as well as Title V (Regulation A+ Improvement) exempt more companies from SEC registration and disclosure requirements, therefore expanding the size of the private markets which already outnumber the public markets two-to-one. This opens the door to more investors placing their nest-eggs in private securities, which lack sufficient transparency and liability protections, and are generally riskier than public securities.

Exemptions from registration with the SEC were originally put in place to help small or growing businesses raise capital with fewer regulatory obligations; however, large private companies and private equity funds have used them to effectively to stay private indefinitely, avoiding the compliance requirements and critical investor protections afforded by public registration. Among these large private companies are the so-called "unicorns," which are considered to be private companies with a valuation at or greater than $1 billion. 10 years ago there were 43 such companies; today, there are 1,205 of them with an astonishing $4 trillion valuation. Indeed, as Center for American Progress Senior Director Alexandra Thornton stated before the House Financial Services Subcommittee of Capital Markets, "[t]here should be no such thing as a unicorn [. . . and] companies with billion-dollar valuations should be required to make basic public disclosures of their finances, governance, and operations[.]" Overall, the private markets are now more than double the size of the public markets: recent statistics show issuers raised roughly $2.9 trillion of capital through exempt offerings annually, compared to only $1.4 trillion through public offerings.

Additionally, this bill would provide blanket access for retail investors to partake in the private securities space without them needing to adequately understanding the risks and lack of protections normally afforded when investing in public securities, opening the door to the potential for significant financial losses and fraudulent schemes. One particularly problematic provision in H.R. 2799—Division B, Title III (Risk Disclosure and Investor Attestation)—would allow individuals to self-certify that they understand these risks and subsequently confers accredited investor status. According to Professor Gina-Gail Fletcher of the Duke University School of Law in her testimony before the Capital Markets Subcommittee, "[i]f retail investors are able to invest in private securities, they are not likely to be provided with sufficiently comprehen-

sive, reliable, and comparable information so as to make an informed investment decision." Echoing Professor Fletcher, the investor advocate community widely understands private securities to be riskier than public securities as they (1) lack disclosures about the business of the company issuing them, (2) are less liquid (i.e., it is harder to exit your position if in a time crunch or the funds are immediately needed), and (3) generally result in more frequent and higher losses than their public counterparts.

Furthermore, several of the provisions H.R. 2799, including Division B, Titles II (Small Business Investor Capital Access), III (Improving Capital Allocation for Newcomers) and VI (Developing and Empowering Our Aspiring Leaders), represent a clear gift to the private equity and venture capital industry, but do nothing to support retail investors. These provisions would raise the number of private funds that are exempt from SEC registration, greatly expanding the amount of funds that do not need to provide critical disclosures about the nature of their investments (which can include companies organized within the borders of foreign adversaries, which could also pose national security risks to the United States).

For these reasons, the Minority opposes 2799.

Sincerely,

MAXINE WATERS,
Ranking Member.
NYDIA M. VELÁZQUEZ,
DAVID SCOTT,
STEPHEN F. LYNCH,
AYANNA PRESSLEY,
BRITTANY PETTERSEN,
Members of Congress.

○